This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

**Usage guidelines**

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

**About Google Book Search**

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES
3 3433 07591629 0

LENOX LIBRARY

Duyckinck Collection.
Presented in 1878.

# ELEMENTS

OF

# FRENCH GRAMMAR:

By M. L'HOMOND,

PROFESSOR EMERITUS IN THE UNIVERSITY OF PARIS.

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH,

WITH

NOTES AND EXERCISES.

TWELFTH EDITION.

BOSTON:
JAMES MUNROE AND COMPANY.
1848.

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1840, by
JAMES MUNROE AND COMPANY,
in the Clerk's office of the District Court for the District of Massachusetts.

TRANSFER FROM LENOX.

# CONTENTS.


| | Page |
|---|---|
| THE ALPHABET, | vi |
| INTRODUCTION, | 1 |
| Long and short Vowels, and Accents, | 2 |

CHAPTER I.

THE NOUN.

| | |
|---|---|
| Gender of Nouns, | 3 |
| Formation of the Plural, | 4 |

CHAPTER II.

THE ARTICLE.

| | |
|---|---|
| Use of the Article in French (note), | 5 |
| Elision of the Article, | 6 |

CHAPTER III.

THE ADJECTIVE.

| | |
|---|---|
| Formation of the Feminine, | 8 |
| Formation of the Plural, | 9 |
| Agreement of the Adjective, | 10 |
| Degrees of Signification, | 10 |
| Nouns and Adjectives of Number, | 12 |

CHAPTER IV.

THE PRONOUN

| | |
|---|---|
| Personal Pronouns, | 13 |
| Pronouns ILS and EUX (note), | 16 |
| Rule of Pronouns, | 17 |
| Adjective Pronouns, | 17 |
| Demonstrative Pronouns, | 18 |
| Indefinite Pronouns, | 20 |

## CHAPTER V.

### THE VERB.


| | Page |
|---|---|
| The Tenses, | 21 |
| Use of the Imperfect and Preterite Definite (note), | 22 |
| The Moods, | 26 |
| Use of the INDICATIVE and the SUBJUNCTIVE (note), | 27 |
| The Conjugations, | 27 |
| Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb AVOIR, | 29 |
| Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb ÊTRE, | 31 |
| Regular Verbs of the First Conjugation, | 33 |
| Observations on the Verbs of the First Conjugation, | 34 |
| Regular Verbs of the Second Conjugation, | 36 |
| Observations on the Verbs of the Second Conjugation, | 38 |
| Regular Verbs of the Third Conjugation, | 39 |
| Regular Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation, | 41 |
| Observations on the Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation, | 43 |
| Verbs conjugated interrogatively, | 43 |
| The Tenses and their formation, | 46 |
| IRREGULAR and DEFECTIVE VERBS, | 47 |
| Vocabulary of the Irregular Verbs, | 48 |
| Agreement of Verbs, | 72 |
| Government of Active Verbs, | 73 |
| Conjugation of Passive Verbs, | 74 |
| Conjugation of Neuter Verbs, | 75 |
| Conjugation of Reflected Verbs, | 77 |
| IMPERSONAL VERBS, | 79 |
| Conjugation of FALLOIR, | 79 |
| Impersonal Verb IL Y A (note), | 80 |
| IL EST and C'EST (note), | 80 |


## CHAPTER VI.

### THE PARTICIPLE.


| | |
|---|---|
| Agreement of Participles, | 82 |
| Agreement of the Past Participle with its subject, | 82 |
| Agreement of the Past Participle with its regimen, | 83 |


## CHAPTER VII.

### THE PREPOSITION.


| | |
|---|---|
| Different kinds of Prepositions, | 85 |

## CHAPTER VIII.

### THE ADVERB.

Page
Different kinds of Adverbs, . . . . . 85

## CHAPTER IX.

### THE CONJUNCTION.

Different kinds of Conjunctions, . . . . . 86
Government of Conjunctions, . . . . . 86
Conjunctions followed by the SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, . . 86

## CHAPTER X.

### INTERJECTIONS: AND PARTICULAR REMARKS ON THE DIFFERENT KINDS OF WORDS.

On the Letters, . . . . . 87
On Compound Nouns, . . . . . 88
On Nouns of Number, . . . . . 89
On Partitive Nouns, . . . . . 89
On Pronouns, . . . . . 90
On Verbs, . . . . . 93
On Prepositions, . . . . . 94
On Adverbs, . . . . . 95

## CHAPTER XI.

### ORTHOGRAPHY.

Orthography of Nouns, . . . . . 96
Orthography of Verbs, . . . . . 97
Orthography of Pronouns, and other words, . . . 98
The Apostrophe, . . . . . 99
The Hyphen, . . . . . 99
The Diæresis, . . . . . 100
The Cedilla, . . . . . 100
The Parenthesis, . . . . . 100

---

EXERCISES, . . . . . 101
VOCABULARY OF VERBS, . . . . . 185
DE LA PLACE DE L'ADJECTIF, . . . . . 188
REMARQUES DÉTACHÉES, . . . . . 192

THE

# ALPHABET.

| Letters. | | Pronunciation. |
|---|---|---|
| A, | a, | ah. |
| B, | b, | bay. |
| C, | c, | say. |
| D | d, | day. |
| E, | e, | a. |
| F, | f, | ef. |
| G, | g, | jay.* |
| H, | h, | ahsh. |
| I, | i, | e. |
| J, | j, | jee.* |
| K, | k, | kah. |
| L, | l, | ell. |
| M, | m, | emm. |
| N, | n, | enn. |
| O, | o, | o. |
| P, | p, | pay. |
| Q, | q, | ku.† |
| R, | r, | erre. |
| S, | s, | ess. |
| T, | t, | tay. |
| U, | u, | u.† |
| V, | v, | vay. |
| X, | x, | eeks. |
| Y, | y, | e grec. |
| Z, | z, | zed. |

* The two consonants *g* and *j* are here sounded like *s* in *pleasure*.

† No similar sound in English.

# THE ELEMENTS

OF

# FRENCH GRAMMAR.

## INTRODUCTION.

GRAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing correctly. In speaking and writing we employ words; these words are composed of letters.

There are two kinds of letters, *vowels* and *consonants*.

The vowels are *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, and *y*. They are called *vowels*, because by themselves they form a *voice*, a sound.

There are three kinds of *e*; *e* mute, *é* close, *è* open.

The *e mute*, as at the end of the words *homme*, man; *monde*, world; — it is called *mute*, because the sound is dull and hardly perceptible.

The *é close*; as at the end of the words *bonté*, goodness; *café*, coffee; — it is called *close*, because it is pronounced with the mouth nearly closed.

The *è open*; as at the end of the words, *procès*, process; *accès*, access; *succès*, success; — it is called *open*, because in order to pronounce it well, you lay stress upon it, and open the teeth.

The *y*, called in French *y grec* [*greek y*], generally stands in place of *ii*, as in *pays*, country; *moyen*, means; *joyeux*, joyous: pronounced *pai-is*, *moi-ien*, *joi-ieux*.[1]

There are eighteen consonants;[2] viz. *b*, *c*, *d*, *f*, *g*, *j*, *k*, *l*,

[1] The only exception to this rule is found in words of Greek origin, such as *hymne*, *Hyppolyte*, *pyramide*, etc., in which it is pronounced like *i* simple.

[2] Not including the letter *h*.

*m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z.* These letters are called consonants, because they form no distinct sound without the help of vowels, as *ba, be, bi, bo, bu ; ca, ce, ci, co, cu ; da, de, di, do, du ;* etc.

There are certain words in which the letter *h* is not pronounced, as *l'homme*, man ; *l'honneur*, honor ; *l'histoire*, history ; etc., which are pronounced as if written *l'omme l'onneur, l'istoire*, etc. It is then called *h mute.*

But in the following words, *la haine*, hatred ; *le hameau*, the hamlet ; *le héros*, the hero ; the letter *h* makes the vowel which follows it guttural. In such cases the *h* is said to be *aspirated.* Thus we write and pronounce separately the two words *la haine*, and not *l'haine ; les héros*, and not as if written *les zhéros.*

## OF THE LONG AND SHORT VOWELS.

The *long* vowels are those, upon which greater stress is laid in pronouncing them, than upon the others.

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| a | is long in | pâte | *dough ;* | and short in | patte | *paw.* |
| e | " | tempête | *storm ;* | " | trompette | *trumpet.* |
| i | " | gîte | *covert ;* | " | petite | *little.* |
| o | " | apôtre | *apostle ;* | " | dévote | *devout.* |
| u | " | flûte | *flute ;* | " | butte | *mound.* |

To mark the different kinds of *e*, and the long vowels, the small signs, called *accents*, are used ; viz. the *acute* accent ( ´ ), which is placed over the close *é*, as in *bonté*, goodness ; the *grave* accent ( ` ), which is placed over the open *è*, as in *accès*, access ; and the *circumflex* accent ( ^ ), which is placed over the greater part of the long vowels, as in *apôtre*, apostle.

## THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

There are in French ten sorts of words, called by Grammarians *Parts of Speech ;* namely, the *Noun*, the *Article*, the *Adjective*, the *Pronoun*, the *Verb*, the *Participle*, the *Preposition*, the *Adverb*, the *Conjunction*, and the *Interjection.*

# CHAPTER I.

## THE NOUN.

The *Noun* is a word which serves to *name* a person or thing, as *Pierre*, Peter ; *Paul*, Paul ; *livre*, book ; *chapeau*, hat.

Nouns are of two kinds ; *Common* and *Proper*.

The *common noun* is that which is applicable to many persons or things of the same kind ; thus *homme*, man ; *cheval*, horse ; *maison*, house, are *common nouns* ; for the name *homme*, man, is applicable to *Pierre*, *Paul*, etc.

The *proper noun* applies to only one person, or one thing ; as *Adam*, *Eve*, *Paris*, *la Seine*, etc.

In nouns, *Gender* and *Number* are to be observed.

In French, there are but two genders, the *Masculine* and the *Feminine*. The names of males are of the *masculine* gender ; as *un père*, a father ; *un lion*, a lion : the names of females are of the *feminine* gender, as *une mère*, a mother ; *une lionne*, a lioness. By imitation, the masculine and feminine genders have been given to inanimate objects, neither male nor female ; as *un livre*, a book ; *une table*, a table ; *le soleil*, the sun ; *la lune*, the moon, etc.[1]

There are two *numbers* ; the *Singular* and *Plural*. We use the *singular*, when only one person or thing is spoken of, as *un homme*, a man ; *un livre*, a book. The *plural*, when several persons or things are spoken of, as *les hommes*, the men ; *les livres*, the books.

---

[1] The gender of French nouns presents one of the greatest difficulties we have to contend with, in learning that language. The rules given by Grammarians are so numerous, and so numerous the exceptions to each rule, that they are of very little benefit to the learner. CHAMBAUD gives *twenty-four* rules, all of which have exceptions, and some very numerous ones ; and the "*few concise rules*" of LEVIZAC occupy *eight pages*. Practice is the only safe guide.

### FORMATION OF THE PLURAL.

GENERAL RULE. To form the plural, add *s* to the singular; as,

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| le frère | *the brother;* | les frères | *the brothers.* |
| la sœur | *the sister;* | les sœurs | *the sisters.* |
| le livre | *the book;* | les livres | *the books.* |
| la table | *the table;* | les tables | *the tables.* |

*First Remark.* Nouns ending in *s*, *x*, *z*, suffer no change in the plural; as

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| le fils | *the son;* | les fils | *the sons.* |
| la voix | *the voice;* | les voix | *the voices.* |
| le nez | *the nose;* | les nez | *the noses.* |

*Second Remark.* Nouns ending in *eau*, *au*, *eu*, *ou*, take an *x* in the plural;[1] as

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| le bateau | *the boat;* | les bateaux | *the boats.* |
| le feu | *the fire;* | les feux | *the fires.* |
| le caillou | *the pebble;* | les cailloux | *the pebbles.* |

*Third Remark.* The greater part of the nouns ending in *al*, *ail*, make their plural in *aux*;[2] as

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| le mal | *the evil;* | les maux | *the evils.* |
| le cheval | *the horse;* | les chevaux | *the horses.* |
| le travail | *the labor;* | les travaux | *the labors.* |

---

[1] *Bambou, clou, coucou, écrou, filou, fou, licou, matou, sou, trou,* and *verrou,* follow the general rule, and form their plural in *s*.

[2] *Bal, bocal, cal, camail, carnaval, détail, épouvantail, évantail, gouvernail, mail, portail, sérail,* follow the general rule. The following are irregular;

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ail | *garlic;* | aulx | *heads of garlic.* |
| bétail | *cattle;* | bestiaux | *cattle.* |
| aïeul | *ancestor;* | aïeux | *ancestors.* |
| ciel | *heaven;* | cieux | *heavens.* |
| œil | *eye;* | yeux | *eyes.* |

*Fourth Remark.* Nouns and adjectives ending in *ant* or *ent*, except those of one syllable, change *t* into *s* in the plural ; as

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| l'enfant | *the child ;* | les enfans | *the children.* |
| le moment | *the moment ;* | les momens | *the moments.* |
| étonnant | *astonishing ;* | étonnans | *astonishing.* |

Some writers do not make this change, but form the plural by adding *s*, according to the general rule.[1]

## CHAPTER II.

### THE ARTICLE.

The *Article* is a word placed before the common nouns, to show their gender and number.

The French have but one article, *le*, or *la*, in the singular ; *les* in the plural. It answers to our definite article *the*.[2] *Le* is put before the singular of nouns of the masculine gender, *le père*, the father : *la*, before the singular of nouns of the feminine gender, *la mère*, the mother : *les*, before all plural nouns, whether masculine or feminine, *les pères*, *les mères*. Hence a noun is known to be of the masculine gender, when you can put *le* before it; — and of the feminine, when you can put *la* before.

There are two remarks to be made on the article.[3]

---

[1] It is better not to drop the *t* in these instances, but to follow the general rule. It is one exception less in the language.

[2] Our indefinite article *a* or *an* is supplied in French by the cardinal number *un*, one : — hence we so often hear French people say, *one* man, *one* horse, and the like, for *a* man, *a* horse, etc.

[3] When is the article to be used in French, and when omitted?

Rule 1. The article is to be used in French before all *common* nouns taken in a *determinate* sense, that is, all common nouns denoting a species, or designating a particular object.

| | |
|---|---|
| *L'*homme est né libre, | *Man is born free.* |
| *Le* livre, que je vous donne, | *The book which I give you.* |

Rule 2. The article is used with the preposition *de* before nouns which denote a part of a species, or a part of an object. In English, *some* is either expressed or understood.

*First Remark.* The *e* is cut off in *le*, and the *a* in *la*, when the next word begins with a vowel or an *h* mute.

Thus you would say *l'argent*, the money, and not *le argent ; l'histoire*, history, and not *la histoire ;* the *apostrophe* (') being substituted in the place of the *e*.

---

| | |
|---|---|
| Elle a *de la* modestie, | *She has modesty.* |
| Ce sont *des* hommes bien sots, | *These are very stupid men.* |
| Donnez moi *du* pain, *de l'*eau, et *de la* bière, | *Give me (some) bread, (some) water, and (some) beer.* |

See *Partitive Nouns*, Chap. X.

*Exception.* When the noun is preceded by an adjective, or by a word expressing quantity, the article is omitted, except after the word *bien.*

| | |
|---|---|
| Vous avez *de beaux* yeux, | *You have beautiful eyes.* |
| Il a *beaucoup de* livres, | *He has a great many books.* |
| Il a *peu d'*argent, | *He has little money.* |
| Il n'a *pas d'*argent, | *He has no money.* |
| *Que de* bruit vous faites ! | *What a noise you make!* |
| Il a bien *de l'*esprit, | *He has a great deal of intellect.* |

Such expressions as *des petits-maîtres*, fops, etc. and such as *les sentiments des anciens philosophes*, the sentiments of *the* ancient philosophers, are not exceptions to this rule ; for, in the first instance, the adjective and noun make but one word, and, in the second, the substantive is taken in a determinate sense.

Rule 3. The article is put before the names of countries, provinces, rivers, winds, and mountains.

| | |
|---|---|
| *La* France est dans l'Europe, | *France is in Europe.* |
| *La* Normandie est dans la France, | *Normandy is in France.* |

*Exceptions.* The article is omitted when we speak of *going to, remaining in,* or *coming from,* a country.

| | |
|---|---|
| Je vais en France, | *I am going to France.* |
| Je demeure en Amérique, | *I live in America.* |
| Je viens d'Espagne, | *I come from Spain.* |

You may say, however, *Je viens de l'Amérique, de l'Afrique, de l'Europe, de l'Asie.*

Also, when the name of a country is governed by another noun, and has the sense of an adjective,

| | |
|---|---|
| Les modes de France, | *French fashions.* |
| Les vins d'Espagne, | *Spanish wines.* |

There are some exceptions to this : for you say,

| | |
|---|---|
| La politesse *de la* France, | *French politeness.* |
| L'intérêt *de l'*Espagne, | *The Spanish interest.* |

*Second Remark.* To join a noun to a word preceding it, the preposition *de* or *à* is placed before it :

| | |
|---|---|
| fruit *de* l'arbre, | *fruit of the tree.* |
| utile *à* l'homme, | *useful to man.* |

Then instead of putting *de le* before a noun masculine beginning with a consonant, you make use of *du* : instead of *à le*, you say *au*.

Before a noun in the plural, *de les* is changed into *des* ; *à les* into *aux*.

## EXAMPLES.

### MASCULINE SINGULAR.

| | |
|---|---|
| *le* maître, | *the master.* |
| *du* maître, *for* de le maître, | *of* or *from the master.* |
| *au* maître, *for* à le maître, | *to the master.* |

### MASCULINE PLURAL.

| | |
|---|---|
| *les* maîtres, | *the masters.* |
| *des* maîtres, *for* de les maîtres, | *of* or *from the masters.* |
| *aux* maîtres, *for* à les maîtres, | *to the masters.* |

### FEMININE PLURAL.

| | |
|---|---|
| *les* maîtresses, | *the mistresses.* |
| *des* maîtresses, *for* de les maîtresses, | *of* or *from the mistresses.* |
| *aux* maîtresses, *for* à les maîtresses, | *to the mistresses.* |

On the contrary, *de* and *à* before *la* undergo no change.

### FEMININE SINGULAR.

| | |
|---|---|
| *la* maîtresse, | *the mistress.* |
| *de la* maîtresse, | *of* or *from the mistress.* |
| *à la* maîtresse, | *to the mistress.* |

---

RULE 4. The French do not use the article before a noun which expresses the quality of a preceding noun.

| | |
|---|---|
| Mon père est avocat, | *My father is a lawyer.* |
| Ferdinand, fils de Charles, roi d'Espagne, | *Ferdinand, the son of Charles, the king of Spain.* |

## CHAPTER III.

### THE ADJECTIVE.

The *Adjective* is a word added to a noun to mark its quality ; as *bon* père, *good* father ; *bonne* mère, *good* mother ; *beau* livre, *beautiful* book, etc. : these words, *bon, bonne, beau,* are adjectives showing the quality of *père, mère, livre,* etc.

A word is known to be an adjective, when we can join to it the word *personne* or *chose,* that is, *person* or *thing* : thus *habile,* clever, *agréable,* agreeable, are adjectives, because we can say *personne habile, chose agréable.*

Adjectives are either *masculine* or *feminine.* This difference of gender is generally marked by the last letter.

### FORMATION OF THE ADJECTIVE FEMININE.

General Rule. When an adjective does not end in *e* mute, the addition of *e* mute forms the feminine ; [1] as,

| Masc. | Fem. | |
|---|---|---|
| prudent | prudent*e* | *prudent.* |
| saint | saint*e* | *holy.* |
| méchant | méchant*e* | *wicked.* |
| poli | poli*e* | *polite.* |

Exceptions. *First exception.* The following adjectives, *cruel, pareil, fol, mol, ancien, bon, gras, gros, nul, muet, sot, épais,* etc., form their feminine by doubling the last consonant and adding *e* mute ; *cruelle, pareille, folle,* etc.

*Beau,* fine, and *nouveau,* new, make, in the feminine, *belle* and *nouvelle ;* because in the masculine you say *bel* and *nouvel* before a word beginning with a vowel

---

[1] All adjectives ending in *e* mute are alike in both genders ; as,

Un homme *aimable,* *an amiable man.*
Une femme *aimable,* *an amiable woman.*

or a mute *h* : *bel oiseau*, fine bird ; *bel homme*, handsome man ; *nouvel appartement*, new apartment, etc.

*Second exception.* *Blanc*, white ; *franc*, frank ; *frais*, fresh ; *sec*, dry ; make in the feminine *blanche*, *franche*, *fraîche*, *sèche*.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| public | *makes* | publique | *public.* |
| caduc | " | caduque | *frail.* |
| long | " | longue | *long.* |
| Grec | " | Grecque | *Greek.* |
| Turc | " | Turque | *Turkish.* |

*Third exception.* Adjectives ending in *f* make their feminine by changing *f* into *v*, and adding *e* mute ; thus,

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| bref | *makes* | brève | *short.* |
| naïf | " | naïve | *ingenuous.* |
| neuf | " | neuve | *new.* |

*Fourth exception.* *Malin*, malign, and *benin*, benignant, make *maligne*, and *benigne*.

*Fifth exception.* Adjectives in *eur* generally make their plural in *euse* ; thus,

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| trompeur | *makes* | trompeuse | *deceitful.* |
| menteur | " | menteuse | *lying.* |
| parleur | " | parleuse | *talkative.*[1] |

*Sixth exception.* Adjectives ending in *x*, change *x* into *se* ; thus,

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| honteux | *makes* | honteuse | *ashamed.* |
| dangereux | " | dangereuse | *dangerous.* |
| jaloux | " | jalouse | *jealous.* |

But *doux*, sweet, makes *douce* ; and *roux*, red, makes *rousse*.

### FORMATION OF THE PLURAL IN ADJECTIVES.

The plural of adjectives is formed like that of nouns, and the same rules are to be applied to them.

---

[1] Some, however, make the feminine in *rice* ; as, *accusateur*, *accusatrice* : and others in *resse* ; as, *vengeur*, *vengeresse*.

### AGREEMENT OF THE ADJECTIVE WITH THE NOUN.

RULE. The adjective agrees in gender and number with the noun to which it relates.

EXAMPLES. *Le bon père*, the good father; *la bonne mère*, the good mother; — *bon* is singular masculine, because *père* is singular masculine; *bonne* is singular feminine, because *mère* is singular feminine.

*De beaux jardins*, fine gardens; *de belles fleurs*, beautiful flowers; — *beaux* is plural masculine, because *jardins* is plural masculine, etc.

When an adjective relates to two nouns of the singular number, it is put in the plural, because two singulars are equivalent to a plural. Ex. *Le roi et le berger sont égaux* (not *égal*) *après la mort*, the king and the peasant are equal after death.

If the two nouns are of different genders, the adjective is put in the masculine plural. Ex. *Mon père et ma mère sont contents* (not *contentes*), my father and mother are content.

With regard to the place of adjectives, there are some, which are put before the nouns, as *beau jardin*, beautiful garden; *grand arbre*, great tree; and others which are put after it, as *habit rouge*, red coat; *table ronde*, round table. In this, practice is the only guide.

### DEGREES OF SIGNIFICATION IN ADJECTIVES.

There are three degrees of signification in adjectives, called by Grammarians *Degrees of Comparison*, viz. the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative.

The *positive* is nothing but the simple form of the adjective, *beau, belle, agréable.*

The *comparative* expresses comparison; when we compare two things, we find one superior, or inferior, or equal, to the other.

1. To denote a *comparative of superiority*, the word *plus*, more, is put before the adjective ; as,

La rose est *plus* belle *que* la violette,
The rose is *more* beautiful *than* the violet.

2. To denote a *comparative of inferiority*, the words *moins*, less ; or *ne . . . pas si*, not so, is put before the adjective ; as,

La violette est *moins* belle, ou *n'est pas si* belle *que* la rose,
The violet is *less* beautiful *than*, or is *not so* beautiful *as*, the rose.

3. To denote a *comparative of equality*, the word *aussi*, as, is put before the adjective ; as,

La rose est *aussi* belle *que* la tulipe,
The rose is *as* beautiful *as* the tulip.

The conjunction *que*, than or as, serves to join the two things compared.

4. There are three adjectives in French, which of themselves express comparison ; *meilleur*, better, instead of *plus bon*, which cannot be used ; *moindre*, less, instead of *plus petit* ; *pire*, worse, instead of *plus mauvais* ; as,

La vertu est *meilleure* que la science,
Virtue is *better* than science, etc.

5. An adjective is in the *superlative*, when it expresses a quality in the highest, or in a very high degree. To form the superlative, you put *très*, very, or *le plus*, the most, before the adjective ; as,

Paris est une *très* belle ville, Paris is a *very* fine city.

In this case, the superlative is said to be *absolute*.

Paris est *la plus* belle des villes, Paris is the *finest* of cities.

You say *le meilleur*, the best ; *le moindre*, the least ; *le pire*, the worst.[1]

This superlative is called *relative*, because it marks a *relation* between two persons or things.

---

[1] If an adjective pronoun precedes the adjective, suppress the article ; as,

Mon meilleur ami, My best friend.

## NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES OF NUMBER.

Nouns of number are those used in counting.

They are of two kinds, *Cardinal* and *Ordinal*. The cardinal numbers are

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 un, une | 15 quinze | 41 quarante-et-un, etc. |
| 2 deux | 16 seize | 50 cinquante |
| 3 trois | 17 dix-sept | 60 soixante |
| 4 quatre | 18 dix-huit | 61 soixante-et-un |
| 5 cinq | 19 dix-neuf | 70 soixante-dix |
| 6 six | 20 vingt | 71 soixante-onze |
| 7 sept | 21 vingt-et un | 72 soixante-douze, etc. |
| 8 huit | 22 vingt-deux | 80 quatre-vingt |
| 9 neuf | 23 vingt-trois | 81 quatre-vingt-un |
| 10 dix | 24 vingt-quatre, etc. | 90 quatre-vingt-dix |
| 11 onze | 30 trente | 91 quatre-vingt-onze |
| 12 douze | 31 trent-et-un, etc. | 100 cent |
| 13 treize | 40 quarante | 101 cent-un |
| 14 quatorze | | |

*mille*, a thousand; *un million*, a million.

[1] From the *cardinal* numbers are formed the *ordinal*; ex-

---

[1] The ordinal numbers are formed by adding *ième* to the cardinal; as,

| | |
|---|---|
| Trois, | trois-ième. |
| Six, | six-ième. |

Those cardinal numbers which end in *e* mute, drop this letter in forming the ordinal. *Cinq* makes *cinquième;* and *neuf* makes *neuvième.*

In speaking of the days of the month, the French make use of the cardinal numbers, excepting *premier*, the first; as,

| | |
|---|---|
| Le premier Janvier, | *The first of January.* |
| Le deux Mars, | *The second of Marth.* |
| Le quatre Mai, | *The fourth of May.* |

Many writers insert the preposition *de* before the name of the month, and say, *Le premier de Janvier*, etc.; which is certainly more in accordance with the analogies of grammar. Others of equal authority omit the preposition; and the usage of good society at the present day seems to favor the omission.

*Remark.* Before *onze*, eleven, the article suffers no elision; and you always say, *le onze, le onzième.*

The French make use of the cardinal numbers, omitting the article, when they speak of kings, etc., except the *first* and *second* of the line; as,

cept *premier, première*, first ; *second, seconde*, second. Still you say,

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| unième | *first,* | as in | vingt-unième | *twenty-first.* |
| deuxième | *second,* | as in | vingt-deuxième | *twenty-second,* &c. |

There are also other nouns of number, which serve to mark a certain quantity ; as *une dixaine*, ten ; *une douzaine*, a dozen, etc.

There are others which denote a part of a whole ; as, *la moitié*, half ; *le tiers*, the third ; *le quart*, the quarter, etc.

Finally, there are others which denote multiplication ; as, *le double*, the double ; *le triple*, the triple ; *le quadruple*, the quadruple ; *le centuple*, a hundred-fold.

---

## CHAPTER IV.

### THE PRONOUN.

The *Pronoun* is a word which supplies the place of the noun.

Pronouns are divided into several kinds.

#### PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

*Personal Pronouns* are those which designate *persons.*

There are three persons ; the *first*, that is, the person who speaks ; the *second*, the person spoken *to* ; the third, the person spoken *of.*

---

| | |
|---|---|
| François Premier, | *Francis the First.* |
| Louis Second, | *Louis the Second.* |
| George Trois, | *George the Third.* |
| Henri Quatre, | *Henry the Fourth.* |

The names of Charles the Fifth, and Pope Sixtus the Fifth, are exceptions. You say, *Charles Quint* and *Sixte Quint.*

### PRONOUN OF THE FIRST PERSON.

This pronoun is of both genders.

| SINGULAR. | | PLURAL. | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Je*, or *moi*,[1] | I. | *Nous*, | we. |
| *de moi*, | of me. | *de nous*, | of us. |
| *à moi*, or *moi*, | to me. | *à nous*, or *nous*, | to us. |
| *me*, | me. | *nous*, | us. |

*Moi* is used for *à moi*, after a verb.

EXAMPLE. *Donnez-moi un livre*, that is, *donnez un livre à moi ;* give me a book.

*Me* is used for *à moi*, or *moi*, to me, before a verb.

EXAMPLE. *Le maître me donnera un livre*, that is, *donnera à moi ;* the master will give me a book. *Le maître me regarde*, that is, *regarde à moi ;* the master looks at me.

### PRONOUN OF THE SECOND PERSON.

It is also of both genders.

| SINGULAR. | | PLURAL. | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Tu*, or *toi*, | thou. | *Vous*, | you. |
| *de toi*, | of thee. | *de vous*, | of you. |
| *à toi*, or *toi*, | to thee. | *à vous*, or *vous*, | to you. |
| *te*, | thee. | *vous*, | you. |

*Te* is used for *à toi*, or *toi*, to thee, before a verb.

EXAMPLES. *Le maître te donnera un livre*, that is, *donnera à toi*, the master will give thee a book. *Le maître te regarde*, that is, *regarde à toi*, the master looks at thee.

---

[1] *Je* and *moi* are used in two different senses, though both in the nominative case ; *je* is always followed or preceded immediately by a verb to which it is the nominative case, and need not be joined to another pronoun ; but *moi* always requires to be followed by one pronoun or more, either expressed or understood ; ex.

*Remark.* Through politeness, *vous*, you, is used, instead of *tu*, thou; precisely as in English. Thus you would say, *vous êtes bien aimable*, you are very amiable; instead of, *tu es bien aimable*, thou art very amiable.

To use the second person singular, *tu* in French, is a sign of familiarity. To speak in this manner is called *tutoyer* (from *tu*, *toi*).

PRONOUNS OF THE THIRD PERSON.

MASCULINE.

| SINGULAR. | | PLURAL. | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Il* or *lui*, | he. | *Ils*, *eux*, | they. |
| *de lui*, | of him. | *d'eux*, | of them. |
| *à lui* or *lui*, | to him. | *à eux*, or *leur*, | to them. |
| *le*, | him. | *eux*, | them. |

FEMININE.

| SINGULAR. | | PLURAL. | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Elle*, | she. | *Elles*, | they. |
| *d'elle*, | of her. | *d'elles*, | of them. |
| *à elle* or *lui*, | to her. | *à elles*, or *leur*, | to them. |
| *la*, | her. | *elles*, | them.[1] |

---

| | |
|---|---|
| Qui a pris mon livre? | *Who took my book?* |
| C'est *moi*, (that is, | *It is I*, (that is, |
| C'est *moi* qui l'ai pris,) | *It is I who took it.*) |

*Moi* must be used instead of *je* before an infinitive mood, or at the end of a sentence, when it is intended to express some sudden emotion, as *grief*, &c.; when *I*, in English, is followed by the pronoun relative, *who* or *whom*, or is preceded by the verb *être*, to be, used impersonally, as *c'est*, it is; and, lastly, whenever any difference or distinction is intended between persons; in which case it must be immediately followed by *je;* ex.

| | |
|---|---|
| Moi *lui parler!* | *I* speak to him or her! |
| Moi *qui vous aime*, | *I* who love you. |
| Il *était à cheval*, | *He* was on horseback, |
| *et* moi *j'étais à pied*, | and *I* was on foot. |

The same rules apply to *toi*, *lui*, *eux*. *Wanostrocht.*
They must also be used after a conjunction; ex.

*Mon frère et* moi, My brother and I.

[1] I. In English the personal pronoun, when governed by a verb, is put after the verb; as, *I strike him;* but in French it is directly the

There is also another pronoun of the third person, *Soi*, himself, or herself; it is of both genders and both numbers. It is called a *reflective pronoun*, because it marks the action of a person towards himself.

*Se* is used for *à soi*, *soi*, himself or herself.

EXAMPLES. *Il* or *elle se donne des louanges*, that is, *il* or *elle donne à soi*; he or she praises himself or herself. *Il* or *elle se flatte*, that is, *il* or *elle flatte soi*; he flatters himself, she flatters herself.

There are two other words, which are used as pronouns; viz.

1. *En*, which signifies

| | |
|---|---|
| de lui | *of him or it.* |
| d'elle | *of her or it.* |
| d'eux, d'elles | *of them.* |

---

contrary; the personal pronouns are placed before the verb which governs them; as, *je le frappe*, I strike him; *je les aime*, I love them; and so with the rest, except with the Imperative mood.

The personal pronouns *me*, *te*, *le*, *les*, *se*, must be repeated before a verb in a simple tense; ex.

*Il* me *flatte et* me *loue*, *He flatters and praises me.*

When the verb is in the Imperative mood, the personal pronouns *moi*, *toi*, are put after it, either as regimen direct or indirect; ex.

*Aide*-toi *et le ciel t'aidera*, *Help thyself, and Heaven will help thee.*
*Donnez*-moi *le livre*, *Give me the book.*

II. When is the Pronoun *They* to be rendered in French by *ils*, and when by *eux*?

1. By *ils*, when neither preposition nor verb is to be placed before it in the sentence; as,

*Ils* parlent beaucoup, *They talk a great deal.*

2. By *eux*, when a preposition or verb comes before it; or when *they* has a conjunction before it in English, with a verb understood after it; as,

C'est *eux* qui parlent, *It is they who speak.*
Elle est plus jeune *qu'eux*, *She is younger than they (are).*

III. When is the Pronoun *Them* to be translated into French by *les*? when by *eux*? when by *leur*? By *les* when it is the object of an action; by *eux* when a preposition comes before it; and by *leur* when it is the regimen indirect of a verb, or the preposition *à* (to) is understood; as,

Il *les* aime, *He loves them.*
Je parle *d'eux*, *I speak of them.*
Elle *leur* donne du pain, *She gives them bread*, (to them.)

Thus, when you say, *j'en parle*, it means, *je parle de lui*, or *d'elle*, &c.; *I speak of him, her, it*, &c.; according to the person or thing before spoken of.

2. *Y*, which signifies

| | |
|---|---|
| à cette chose | *to that thing.* |
| à ces choses | *to those things.* |
| là, ou dans cet endroit | *there*, or *in that place.* |

Thus, when you say, *je m'y applique*, it means *je m'applique à cette chose*, or *à ces choses*; I apply myself to that thing *or* to those things. *J'y ai été*; I have been there.[1]

### RULE OF PRONOUNS.

The pronouns *il, elle, ils, elles*, he, she, it, they, should always be of the same gender and number as the noun, whose place they take. Thus, speaking of *tête*, the head, say, *elle me fait mal*; she pains me: *elle*, she, because this pronoun refers to *tête*, head, which is singular feminine: — and speaking of *plusieurs jardins*, many gardens, say *ils sont beaux*; they are beautiful: *ils*, they, because this pronoun refers to *jardins*, gardens, which is plural masculine.

### ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

1. *Adjective pronouns* are those which mark *possession*; as,

| | |
|---|---|
| *mon* livre | *my book.* |
| *votre* cheval | *your horse.* |
| *son* chapeau | *his hat,* |

that is, *le livre qui est à moi*, the book which is, or belongs, to me; etc.

---

[1] *En* and *y* are always put before the verb, except with the Imperative affirmative.

| SINGULAR. | | PLURAL. | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Masc. | Fem. | *Of both genders.* | |
| mon | ma | mes | *my* |
| ton | ta | tes | *thy* |
| son | sa | ses | *his*, *her*, or *its* |
| notre | notre | nos | *our* |
| votre | votre | vos | *your* |
| leur | leur | leurs | *their.* |

*First remark.* These pronouns are always joined to a noun ; as, *mon livre*, my book ; *ton chapeau*, thy hat.

*Second remark.* *Mon*, *ton*, *son*, are used before feminine nouns beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute ; as,

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *mon* âme | for | *ma* âme | *my soul.* |
| *ton* humeur | " | *ta* humeur | *thy humor.* |
| *son* épée | " | *sa* épée | *his* or *her sword.* |

ANOTHER PRONOUN.

| SINGULAR. | | PLURAL. | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Masc. | Fem. | Masc. | Fem. | |
| Le mien | la mienne | Les miens | les miennes | *mine* |
| Le tien | la tienne | Les tiens | les tiennes | *thine* |
| Le sien | la sienne | Les siens | les siennes | *his*, *hers*, *its.* |

| Masc. | Fem. | *Of both genders.* | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Le nôtre | la nôtre | Les nôtres | *ours* |
| Le vôtre | la vôtre | Les vôtres | *yours* |
| Le leur | la leur | Les leurs | *theirs.* |

2. There are other *adjective pronouns*, which serve to point out the person or thing spoken of; as when I say, *ce livre*, this book ; *cette table*, this table ; I point out the *livre* or *table*, spoken of. These are called *Demonstrative* Pronouns.

| SINGULAR. | | | PLURAL. | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Masc. | Fem. | | Masc. | Fem. | |
| Ce, cet | cette | } *this* or | Ces | ces | } *these* or |
| Celui | celle | } *that* | Ceux | celles | } *those.* |
| Celui-ci | celle-ci | *this* | Ceux-ci | celles-ci | *these.* |
| Celui-là | celle-là | *that* | Ceux-là | celles-là | *those.* |
| | Ceci | *this* } have no plural. | | | |
| | Cela | *that* } | | | |

*Remark.* *Ce* is put before nouns beginning with a consonant or an aspirated *h* ; *ce village*, this village ; *ce hameau*, this hamlet : *cet* is put before a vowel or an *h* mute ; *cet oiseau*, this bird ; *cet homme*, this man.[1]

*Celui-ci*, *celle-ci*, denote things near us ; *celui-là*, *celle-là*, things distant ; and are not followed by any noun.

3. There are, also, pronouns called *Relative*. They are *qui*, who, *que*, whom. They are called *relative*, because they *relate* to a preceding noun ; as when I say, *Dieu, qui a créé le monde*, God, who has created the world ; *qui* relates to *Dieu : le livre, que je lis*, the book, which I read ; *que* relates to *livre*. The word to which *qui* or *que* relates is called the *antecedent*. In the two examples given above, *Dieu* is the *antecedent* of the relative pronoun *qui* ; *livre* that of *que*.

*Remark.* The relative pronouns *qui*, who ; *dont* for *de qui*, of whom ; and *que*, whom, are of both genders and both numbers.[2]

The relative pronoun *lequel*, which, is a compound of *quel* and the article. It is thus varied.

| SINGULAR. | | | PLURAL. | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Masc. | Fem. | | Masc. | Fem. |
| *Lequel* | *laquelle* | which ; | *lesquels* | *lesquelles.* |
| *duquel* | *de laquelle* | of which ; | *desquels* | *desquelles.* |
| *auquel* | *à laquelle* | to which ; | *auxquelles* | *auxquelles.* |

4. There are also *Interrogative Pronouns* ; *qui*, who, whom ? *que*, what ? as when I say ; *qui a fait cela ?*

---

[1] The demonstrative pronoun *ce* is sometimes indeclinable, and may be followed by the verb *être*, to be, in the plural ; as *Sont-ce-là les dames que vous attendiez ? Oui, ce sont elles :* Are these the ladies you expected ? Yes, they are. *Sont-ce-là vos chevaux ? Oui, ce les sont* : Are these your horses ? Yes, these are they.

[2] See particular remarks, Chap. X. Rem. 6 and 7.

who has done that ? *qui cherchez-vous ?* whom seek you ? *de qui, à qui parlez-vous ?* of whom, to whom do you speak ? *que vous dirai-je ?* what shall I say to you ? *Qui* and *que* are interrogative, when they have no antecedent, and you can turn the phrase by saying *quelle personne*, or *quelle chose?* what person, or what thing ? Thus in the above examples, you can say *quelle personne a fait cela ?* what person has done that ? *quelle chose vous dirai-je ?* what thing shall I tell you ?

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS,

### OR THOSE WHICH HAVE A GENERAL MEANING.

Indefinite pronouns are of *four kinds.*

1. Those which are never joined to a noun ; as

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| on [1] | *they, somebody.* | autrui | *others, other people.* |
| quelqu'un | *somebody.* | personne | *nobody.* |
| quiconque | *whoever.* | chacun | *every one.* |

When I say, *on frappe à la porte*, somebody knocks at the door ; *quelqu'un vous appelle*, somebody calls you ; I speak of a person without designating any particular person.

2. Those which are always joined to a noun ; as

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| quelque | *some.* | quelconque | *whatever.* |
| chaque | *every.* | certain | *certain.* |

Examples ; *quelque nouvelle*, some news ; *un certain auteur*, a certain author ; etc.

---

[1] *On*, when preceded by *et, ou, si, que, qui, quoi*, may take *l'* before it, for euphony, unless the word following begins with *l ;* thus you say,

| | |
|---|---|
| si l'on vous blâme | *if they blame you.* |
| si on le loue ; etc. | *if they praise him ; etc.* |

3. Those which are sometimes joined to a noun and sometimes not ; as

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| nul | *no, none.* | même | *same.* |
| aucun | *no, none.* | tel | *such.* |
| l'un | *the one.* | plusieurs | *many.* |
| l'autre | *the other.* | tout | *all, every.* |

4. Those which are followed by *que ;* as

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| qui que | *whoever.* | quelque ... que | *however.* |
| quoi que | *whatever.* | tout ... que | *however.* |
| quel que | *whatever.* | tel que | *such as.* |

EXAMPLES. *Quel que soit votre mérite*, whatever your merit may be ; *quoi que vous fassiez*, whatever you may do ; *quelques richesses que vous ayez*, whatever riches you may have ; *tout savant que vous êtes*, learned as you are.[1]

## CHAPTER V.

### THE VERB.

The *Verb* is a word, which serves to express our existence or our actions : thus the word *être*, to be, is a verb; *je suis*, I am : the word *lire*, to read, is a verb ; *je lis*, I read.

A word is known to be a verb, when you can place before it *je, tu, il ; nous, vous, ils ;* I, thou, he, she,

[1] See Chap. X., Remarks 9 and 10.

or it ; we, you, they ; as, *je lis*, I read ; *tu lis*, thou readest ; etc.

The pronouns *je*, *nous*, I, we, denote the first person, that is, the person speaking ; *tu*, *vous*, thou, you, mark the second person, that is, the person spoken to ; *il*, *elle*, *ils*, *elles*, he, she, they, and all nouns placed before a verb, denote the third person, that is, the person spoken of.

Verbs have two numbers ; the *singular*, when one person or thing is spoken of ; as, *je lis*, I read ; *l'enfant dort*, the child sleeps : the *plural*, when we speak of many persons, or things ; as, *nous lisons*, we read; *les enfants dorment*, the children sleep.

There are three *Times* or Tenses ; the *Present*, the *Past*, and the *Future*.

### THE PRESENT.

The present affirms a thing, as taking place at the moment we speak ; as, *je marche*, I walk.

### THE PAST.

The Past is divided into

1. The *Imperfect*, which expresses a past action, as present, relative to something else, which is also past ; as, *je lisais, quand vous entrâtes*, I was reading when you came in.

2. *The Preterite Definite*, or *Perfect*, which expresses it, as having taken place at a time completely past, no part of which remains ; as, *je voyageai l'année dernière*, I travelled last year.[1]

3. The *Preterite Indefinite*, which expresses it, as having taken place at a past time, which is not yet com-

[1] From this, it will be seen, that the Imperfect and the Preterite, though both referring to a time past, cannot be used indifferently. The proper use of these two tenses presents no inconsiderable difficulty to a beginner; for, having only one simple past tense in English, we use the imperfect to express a thing as having been done this morning, yesterday, or a year ago. But this is not the case in French.

pletely finished and over ; as, *j'ai écrit aujourd'hui*, I have written to-day.

---

When, then, shall we use the Imperfect in French, and when the Preterite ?

RULES. I. THE IMPERFECT must be used ;

1. In all cases in which you would use in English the *present participle* of the verb, with the imperfect of the auxiliary *to be* ; for you then mark an action as present in a time past ; as

*J'écrivais*, quand il arriva.
I *was writing*, when he arrived.

2. When you wish to express the frequency of an action, or would say, in English, *used to*, or was in the *habit of* ; as

J'y *allais* souvent, I *used* to go there often.
Alors je *fumais* beaucoup, I was then in the *habit of* smoking a great deal.

3. When *continuation* is expressed, and you wish to say, that a thing not only *was*, but that it *continued* to be ; thereby intimating that the thing was not brought to a conclusion, but remained *unfinished*, or, as the name of the tense denotes, *imperfect* ; as

Il *était* bel homme, et son père *était* riche.
He was a handsome man, and his father was rich ;

that is to say, they *were* handsome and rich, and *continued* to be so.

4. After the conjunction *si*, if, in connexion with a verb in the conditional present ; as

*Si* j'*avais* plus d'amis, je *serais* plus heureux.
If I had more friends, I should be happier.

II. The PRETERITE DEFINITE must be used ;

1. When we speak of an isolated action *passed*, and *entirely done with* ; as

Il *naquit*, et il *mourut*.
He was born, and died.

4. The *Pluperfect*, which expresses it, as past in itself, and also past in reference to something else, equally past; as, j'*avais fini*, *quand vous vîntes*, I had finished, when you came.

---

This tense is sometimes, and very properly, called the *Perfect*, since it represents an action as *perfected*.

2. When we speak of an action, done without reference to any thing else, and in a time *completely* past, so that none of it remains; as,

| | |
|---|---|
| J'*allai* à la Comédie *hier*, | I went to the play yesterday. |
| Je *vis* mon père *la semaine passée*, | I saw my father last week. |

*Hier* and *la semaine passée*, express a time entirely passed; as would *le mois dernier*, last month; *l'année dernière*, last year.

To authorize the use of this tense, the interval of at least one day is required; so that the expression, *je vis mon frère ce matin*, I saw my brother this morning, would be incorrect.

This tense is sometimes called the *Historic tense*, because it is the prevailing tense in all histories and narratives, running through them like a thread or connecting chain.

Let us now bring these rules to the test, by applying them to a page of some French author. Let us take, for example, an extract from the Third Chapter of the First Book of Gil Blas, where the author speaks of the patrol entering the little tavern at Cacabelos, attracted by the cries of the Asturian and the muleteer.

"La patrouille, qui par hasard en ce moment se *trouva* près de l'hôtellerie, qu'elle *connaissait* pour un lieu digne de son attention, y *entra* and *demanda* la cause de ces cris. L'hôte, qui *chantait* dans sa cuisine, et qui *feignait* de ne rien entendre, *fut* obligé de conduire le commandant et ses archers à la chambre de la personne qui *criait*."

"The patrol, that accidentally *found* itself at that moment near the tavern, which it *knew* for a place worthy of its attention, *went in*, and *demanded* the cause of the outcries. The landlord, who *was singing* in his kitchen, and *feigning* to hear nothing, *was* obliged to conduct the commander and his attendants to the chamber of the person who *was crying*."

I have put all the verbs in this extract in *italics*. They are as follows:

| PRETERITE. | IMPERFECT. |
|---|---|
| *trouva*, | *connaissait*, |
| *entra*, | *chantait*, |
| *demanda*, | *feignait*, |
| *fut*, | *criait*. |

5. The *Preterite Anterior*, which expresses it as having taken place *before* something else at a time already past: as, *lorsque j'eus lu, je partis ;* when, or after I had read, I departed.

### THE FUTURE.

The Future is divided into,

1. The *Future Absolute*, which simply affirms, that an action will take place at a time not yet arrived ; as, *je sortirai demain ;* I shall or will go out to-morrow.

2. The *Future Anterior*, or the *past future*, as it is sometimes called in French, expresses, that an action, *now* future, will be past or done *before* a given time ; as, *j'aurai*

---

Observe, that the author, in speaking of the patrol, makes use of the *preterite tense;* he says, *se trouva.* Why does he not make use of the *imperfect*, and say, *se trouvait?* Simply because *continuation* is neither expressed nor implied, nor could you, in this case, say, in English, *was finding*, *used to find*, or *was in the habit of finding:* but you speak of an isolated action *past* and *entirely done with*, and therefore you make use of the *preterite* tense. — The next verb is *connaissait*, a verb in the *imperfect* tense. Why, you may ask, is not this verb in the *preterite* tense? for here we cannot say, in English, *was knowing.* Very true, you cannot; but then *continuation* is here implied; for it was not only at that moment, that the patrol *knew* the tavern, but it had *long known* and *continued to know* it as a place worthy its attention; the tavern *used* to be known for a bad place. — Next we have two more preterites, *entra et demanda.* You will now be able to tell me why these verbs were not put in the *imperfect* tense. You will say, very properly, because they do not imply *repetition* or *habit;* and because you could not say, in English, *was entering and was demanding.* Again, we find the landlord *chantait* and *feignait;* why not make use of the *preterite* tense, and say *chanta* and *feignit?* Because here you would say, in English, *was singing*, and *feigning*, and not *sung*, and *feigned.* — The next verb is in the *preterite tense;* it is *fut obligé* and not *était obligé;* and this for the same reason that *trouva*, *entra*, *demanda* were used before, viz., because it refers to an isolated event, completely past. And now comes the verb *criait* in the *imperfect* tense. This verb, too, you may say, refers to *an isolated fact*, *completely past and gone.* You are right; but then recollect, you would render it in English by, *was crying*, and of course it should be in the imperfect tense in French.

In regard to the Preterite Indefinite, or *Compound of the Present*, as some grammarians call it, though it is very often used instead of

*fini, quand vous arriverez ;* I shall have finished, when you arrive (when you *shall arrive*).

There are five moods, or manners of expression, in French.

1. THE INDICATIVE, by which we affirm, that a thing is, or has been, or will be.

2. THE CONDITIONAL, by which we say, that a thing would be, or would have been, on a certain *condition.*

3 THE IMPERATIVE, by which we command that it shall be done.

---

the Preterite Definite, yet in no instance can the Preterite Definite supply its place. Thus you may say,

| | |
|---|---|
| J'ai écrit hier, | *I have written yesterday.* |
| J'écrivis hier, | *I wrote yesterday.* |

In French, the first expression is quite as correct as the second, though this is not the case in English. You say also, and, indeed, you *must* say, J'ai écrit ce matin, *I have written this morning.* But it would be incorrect to say, J'écrivis ce matin, *I wrote this morning.* One rule will be sufficient to clear up all difficulties in the use of this tense.

RULE. The Preterite Indefinite must be used, whenever we say a thing has happened within the *day, week, month,* or *age,* in which we live; or, in more general terms, whenever you place the pronoun *ce, cette,* this, before the time mentioned; as,

| | |
|---|---|
| Je l'ai vu aujourd'hui, | *I have seen him to-day.* |
| J'ai été malade *cette* semaine, | *I have been sick this week.* |
| Il a chanté *ce* mois-ci, | *He has sung this month.* |
| La recolte a été bonne *cette* année, etc. | *The crop has been good this year,* etc. |

In regard to the Pluperfect, and the Preterite Anterior, there is no great difficulty in distinguishing their proper use. The conjunction *si* requires after it the Imperfect tense of a verb, when used in connection with the Conditional Present; and when used in connexion with the Conditional Preterite it requires the Pluperfect, or compound of the imperfect; as, Si j'*avais eu* de l'argent, je vous *aurais payé;* If I had had money, I would have paid you. When employed to express an action as past, in reference to some other action also past, the action expressed by this tense is the principal object of the speaker, and what follows is subordinate; as,

4. The Subjunctive, by which we express our desire, or doubt, or fear, that it may be.[1]

5. The Infinitive, by which we express an action or a state of being in general, without number or person; as, *lire*, to read; *être*, to be.

To recite the different moods of a verb, with their tenses, numbers, and persons, is called *Conjugation*.

There are in French four Conjugations, which are distinguished from each other by the termination of the infinitive.

The Infinitive of the first conjugation ends in *er*; as aim*er*, to love.

Of the second, in *ir*; as, fin*ir*, to finish.

Of the third, in *oir*; as, recev*oir*, to receive.

Of the fourth, in *re*; as rend*re*, to give back.

---

Nous *avions* diné, lorsqu'il arriva. *We had dined when he arrived.*

On the contrary, when the Preterite Anterior is used, it expresses the subordinate action, and what follows is the main object of attention; as,

Dès qu'il *eut mangé*, il sortit.

And, as a general rule, this tense is very seldom used except after the adverbs

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *Aussitôt que*, *D'abord que*, *Dès que*, | As soon as; | *Après que*, *Lorsque*, *Quand*, | After; When. |

[1] It would be difficult to give the pupil any rules which would always indicate, in a clear and unequivocal manner, when he should use the Indicative mood and when the Subjunctive, after the conjunction *que*. The rules given in the Grammar of Chambaud occupy upwards of seven large and closely printed pages, and, after all, much is left to be determined by practice; for it is only by practice that we can be sure that our application of a rule is correct It is, however, very necessary, that the learner should fix in his mind, as early as possible, some general rule upon this important subject, which will direct him in most cases, if it be not sufficient for all.

I. The Indicative mood must be used in the second, or *consecu-*

Grammarians divide verbs into *Active*, *Passive*, *Neuter*, *Reflective*, and *Impersonal*.

There are also two verbs, which are called *Auxiliary*, because they help to conjugate all the others ; we begin with these two verbs.

---

*tive* part of a sentence, whenever the verb in the first or leading clause of that sentence affirms a thing in a direct and unconditional manner ; as

Je *sais* qu'il *est* malade, *I know that he is sick.*
Je vous *assure* que c'*est* vrai, *I assure you that it is true.*

II. The Subjunctive mood must be used;

1. After verbs expressing *doubt, desire, fear, will, surprise, admiration ;* as,

Je *doute* qu'il le *fasse*, *I doubt whether he will do it.*
Je *désire* qu'il *vienne*, *I desire that he may come.*
Je *crains* qu'il ne *soit* malade, *I fear he may be sick*, etc.

2. Whenever the leading verb in the sentence is used negatively or interrogatively ; as,

Je *ne crois pas* qu'il *vienne*, *I do not believe he will come.*
*Croyez vous* qu'il *vienne ?* *Do you believe he will come ?*

The Subjunctive Present of the verb *savoir* is sometimes used negatively with elegance, in the beginning of a sentence, or in answering a question, instead of the Indicative ; as,

Je ne *sache* rien de plus facheux, que, etc.
*I know nothing more grievous than, etc.*
Pas que je *sache*, *Not that I know of.*

But this is confined to the first person singular, and used only as a colloquial expression. The student will find a more complete system of rules on the use of the Subjunctive mood, at the close of the Exercises.

# AUXILIARY VERB

## AVOIR, *to have.*

INFIN. PRES. Avoir, *to have.* PAST, Avoir eu, *to have had.*
PART. PRES. Ayant, *having.* PAST, Eu, eue, *had;*
ayant eu, *having had.*[1]

### INDICATIVE.

| PRESENT. | PRETERITE INDEFINITE. |
|---|---|
| *I have.* | *I have had.* |
| J'ai | J'ai eu |
| Tu as | Tu as eu |
| Il *or* elle a | Il a eu |
| Nous avons | Nous avons eu |
| Vous avez | Vous avez eu |
| Ils *or* elles ont. | Ils ont eu. |
| **IMPERFECT.** | **PLUPERFECT** |
| *I had*, or *used to have, etc.* | *I had had.* |
| J'avais[2] | J'avais eu |
| Tu avais | Tu avais eu |
| Il *or* elle avait | Il avait eu |
| Nous avions | Nous avions eu |
| Vous aviez | Vous aviez eu |
| Ils *or* elles avaient. | Ils avaient eu. |
| **PRETERITE DEFINITE.** | **PRETERITE ANTERIOR.** |
| *I had.* | *I had had.* |
| J'eus | J'eus eu |
| Tu eus | Tu eus eu |
| Il eut | Il eut eu |
| Nous eûmes | Nous eûmes eu |
| Vous eûtes | Vous eûtes eu |
| Ils eurent. | Ils eurent eu. |

[1] Throughout this verb, *eu* is pronounced like the French *u*: thus you pronounce *eus*, *eusse*, etc., as if written *u*, *usse*, etc.

[2] The method of writing *ai* instead of *oi*, in the imperfect and conditional of the verbs, was first introduced by Voltaire, and has since come into almost general use.

| FUTURE ABSOLUTE. | FUTURE ANTERIOR. |
|---|---|
| *I shall have, etc.* | *I shall have had, etc.* |
| J'aurai | J'aurai eu |
| Tu auras | Tu auras eu |
| Il aura | Il aura eu |
| Nous aurons | Nous aurons eu |
| Vous aurez | Vous aurez eu |
| Ils auront. | Ils auront eu |

## CONDITIONAL.

| PRESENT. | PRETERITE. |
|---|---|
| *I should have, etc.* | *I should have had, etc.* |
| J'aurais | J'aurais eu |
| Tu aurais | Tu aurais eu |
| Il aurait | Il aurait eu |
| Nous aurions | Nous aurions eu |
| Vous auriez | Vous auriez eu |
| Ils auraient. | Ils auraient eu. |

## IMPERATIVE.

| *Have*, or *have thou, etc.* | *Let us have, etc.* |
|---|---|
| (No first person.) | Ayons |
| Aie | Ayez |
| Qu'il ait. | Qu'ils aient. |

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

| PRESENT. | PRETERITE. |
|---|---|
| *That I may have, etc.* | *That I may have had, etc.* |
| Que j'aie | Que j'aie eu |
| Que tu aies | Que tu aies eu |
| Qu'il ait | Qu'il ait eu |
| Que nous ayons | Que nous ayons eu |
| Que vous ayez | Que vous ayez eu |
| Qu'ils aient. | Qu'ils aient eu. |

| IMPERFECT. | PLUPERFECT.[1] |
|---|---|
| *That I might have, etc.* | *That I might have had, etc.* |
| Que j'eusse | Que j'eusse eu |
| Que tu eusses | Que tu eusses eu |
| Qu'il eût | Qu'il eût eu |
| Que nous eussions | Que nous eussions eu |
| Que vous eussiez | Que vous eussiez eu |
| Qu'ils eussent. | Qu'ils eussent eu. |

[1] This form of the verb, omitting the conjunction *que*, is often used, instead of the Preterite Conditional.

# AUXILIARY VERB

## ÊTRE, *to be.*

INF. PRES. Être, *to be.* PAST, Avoir été, *to have been.*
PART. PRES. Étant, *being.* PAST. Été, *been;*
ayant été, *having been.*

### INDICATIVE.

| PRESENT. | PRETERITE INDEFINITE. |
|---|---|
| *I am, etc.* | *I have been, etc.* |
| Je suis | J'ai été |
| Tu es | Tu as été |
| Il *or* elle est | Il a été |
| Nous sommes | Nous avons été |
| Vous êtes | Vous avez été |
| Ils *or* elles sont. | Ils ont été. |
| **IMPERFECT.** | **PLUPERFECT.** |
| *I was* or *used to be, etc.* | *I had been, etc.* |
| J'étais | J'avais été |
| Tu étais | Tu avais été |
| Il *or* elle était | Il avait été |
| Nous étions | Nous avions été |
| Vous étiez | Vous aviez été |
| Il *or* elles étaient. | Ils avaient été. |
| **PRETERITE DEFINITE.** | **PRETERITE ANTERIOR.** |
| *I was, etc.* | *I had been, etc.* |
| Je fus | J'eus été |
| Tu fus | Tu eus été |
| Il fut | Il eut été |
| Nous fûmes | Nous eûmes été |
| Vous fûtes | Vous eûtes été |
| Ils furent. | Ils eurent été. |
| **FUTURE ABSOLUTE.** | **FUTURE ANTERIOR.** |
| *I shall be, etc.* | *I shall have been, etc.* |
| Je serai | J'aurai été |
| Te seras | Tu auras été |
| Il sera | Il aura été |
| Nous serons | Nous aurons été |
| Vous serez | Vous aurez été |
| Ils seront. | Ils auront été. |

## CONDITIONAL.

| PRESENT. | PRETERITE. |
|---|---|
| *I should be, etc.* | *I should have been, etc.* |
| Je serais | J'aurais été |
| Tu serais | Tu aurais été |
| Il serait | Il aurait été |
| Nous serions | Nous aurions été |
| Vous seriez | Vous auriez été |
| Ils seraient. | Ils auraient été. |

## IMPERATIVE.

| *Be*, or *be thou, etc.* | *Let us be, etc.* |
|---|---|
| (No first person.) | Soyons |
| Sois | Soyez |
| Qu'il soit. | Qu'ils soient. |

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

| PRESENT. | PRETERITE. |
|---|---|
| *That I may be, etc.* | *That I may have been, etc.* |
| Que je sois | Que j'aie été |
| Que tu sois | Que tu aies été |
| Qu'il soit | Qu'il ait été |
| Que nous soyons | Que nous ayons été |
| Que vous soyez | Que vous ayez été |
| Qu'ils soient. | Qu'ils aient été. |

| IMPERFECT. | PLUPERFECT.[1] |
|---|---|
| *That I might be, etc.* | *That I might have been, etc.* |
| Que je fusse | Que j'eusse été |
| Que tu fusses | Que tu eusses été |
| Qu'il fût | Qu'il eût été |
| Que nous fussions | Que nous eussions été |
| Que vous fussiez | Que vous eussiez été |
| Qu'ils fussent. | Qu'ils eussent été. |

[1] This form of the verb, omitting the conjunction *que*, is often used instead of the Preterite Conditional.

# FIRST CONJUGATION.

## *In* ER.

## AIMER, *to love.*

INF. PRES. Aimer, *to love.* PAST, Avoir aimé, *to have loved.*
PART. PRES. Aimant, *loving.* PAST, Aimé, aimée, *loved;*
ayant aimé, *having loved.*

## INDICATIVE.

| PRESENT. | PRETERITE INDEFINITE. |
|---|---|
| *I love, etc.* | *I have loved, etc.* |
| J'aime | J'ai aimé |
| Tu aimes | Tu as aimé |
| Il *or* elle aime | Il a aimé |
| Nous aimons | Nous avons aimé |
| Vous aimez | Vous avez aimé |
| Ils *or* elles aiment. | Ils ont aimé. |
| IMPERFECT. | PLUPERFECT. |
| *I loved*, or *used to love, etc.* | *I had loved, etc.* |
| J'aimais | J'avais aimé |
| Tu aimais | Tu avais aimé. |
| Il *or* elle aimait | Il avait aimé |
| Nous aimions | Nous avions aimé |
| Vous aimiez | Vous aviez aimé |
| Ils *or* elles aimaient. | Ils avaient aimé. |
| PRETERITE DEFINITE. | PRETERITE ANTERIOR. |
| *I loved, etc.* | *I had loved.* |
| J'aimai | J'eus aimé |
| Tu aimas | Tu eus aimé |
| Il aima | Ils eut aimé |
| Nous aimâmes | Nous eûmes aimé |
| Vous aimâtes | Vous eûtes aimé |
| Ils aimèrent. | Ils eurent aimé. |
| FUTURE ABSOLUTE. | FUTURE ANTERIOR. |
| *I shall* or *will love.* | *I shall have loved.* |
| J'aimerai | J'aurai aimé |
| Tu aimeras | Tu auras aimé |
| Il aimera | Il aura aimé |
| Nous aimerons | Nous aurons aimé |
| Vous aimerez | Vous aurez aimé |
| Ils aimeront. | Il auront aimé. |

## CONDITIONAL.

| PRESENT. | PRETERITE. |
|---|---|
| *I should love.* | *I should have loved.* |
| J'aimerais | J'aurais aimé |
| Tu aimerais | Tu aurais aimé |
| Il aimerait | Il aurait aimé |
| Nous aimerions | Nous aurions aimé |
| Vous aimeriez | Vous auriez aimé |
| Ils aimeraient. | Ils auraient aimé. |

## IMPERATIVE.

| *Love thou* | *Let us love.* |
|---|---|
| (No first person.) | Aimons |
| Aime | Aimez |
| Qu'il aime. | Qu'ils aiment. |

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

| PRESENT. | PRETERITE. |
|---|---|
| *That I may love.* | *That I may have loved.* |
| Que j'aime | Que j'aie aimé |
| Que tu aimes | Que tu aies aimé |
| Qu'il aime | Qu'il ait aimé |
| Que nous aimions | Que nous ayons aimé |
| Que vous aimiez | Que vous ayez aimé |
| Qu'ils aiment. | Qu'ils aient aimé. |
| **IMPERFECT.** | **PLUPERFECT.** |
| *That I might love.* | *That I might have loved.* |
| Que j'aimasse | Que j'eusse aimé |
| Que tu aimasses | Que tu eusses aimé |
| Qu'il aimât | Qu'il eût aimé |
| Que nous aimassions | Que nous eussions aimé |
| Que vous aimassiez | Que vous eussiez aimé |
| Qu'ils aimassent. | Qu'ils eussent aimé. |

### OBSERVATIONS ON THE VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

1. In verbs ending in *ger*, the *g* should always, for the sake of softness in the pronunciation, be followed by *e* mute, when it comes in collision with *a* or *o* : thus say, ***nous partageons***, we share ; ***je mangeais***, I ate ; ***il jugea***, he judged : and not, ***nous partagons***, ***je mangais***, etc.

2. Verbs ending in *ler* or *ter*, preceded by an *e* mute, as *appeler*, to call ; *niveler*, to level ; *jeter*, to throw ; *projeter*, to project, etc., do not double their consonants *l* and *t*, except before an *e* mute ; as, *j'appelle, j'appellerai ; qu'il jette, il jetterait*, etc. : but you would write with a single *l* or *t*, *nous appelons, vous appelez ; il jeta, ils jetèrent*, etc. : the vowel, which follows *l* and *t*, not being in these last cases an *e* mute.

*Remark.* The verbs *décéler*, to disclose, *révéler*, to reveal, *végéter*, to vegetate, and the like, though terminating in *ler, ter*, never double the consonants *l* and *t*, because the *é* preceding is not a mute, but a close *é*.

3. Those verbs, whose present participle ends in *iant*, as, *prier*, to pray ; *lier*, to bind ; *nier*, to deny, etc., whose present participles are, *priant, liant, niant*, take a double *i* in the first and second person plural of the Imperfect of the Indicative, and of the Present of the Subjunctive : as, *nous priions, vous priiez ; que nous liions, que vous liiez.*

4. Those verbs, whose present participle ends in *yant*, as, *payer*, to pay ; *ployer*, to bend ; *appuyer*, to prop, etc., which make *payant, ployant, appuyant*, etc., take a *y* and an *i* in the first and second persons plural of the Imperfect of the Indicative, and of the Present of the Subjunctive : as, *nous payions, vous payiez ; que nous payions, que vous payiez.*

*Remark.* In the conjugation of these verbs, the *y* is not used except when the sound of double *i* is heard in their pronunciation : *je ployais*, I bent ; *tu essuyais*, thou didst wipe ; *appuyez*, prop, etc. Hence, it results, that before an *e* mute, when the sound of *i* simply is heard, the *y* should never be used, but only *i* : as, *je ploie, tu essuies, j'appuierai, ils choient.*

5. Those verbs, whose Infinitive ends in *éer*, as, *créer*, to create ; *agréer*, to receive kindly, take *ée*, in the Indicative Present, the Future Absolute, the Conditional Present, the Imperative, the Subjunctive Present, and the Past Participle masculine ; *je crée, tu crées, je créerai, je créerais, créé*, etc. : in the past participle feminine, three are inserted ; as, *une proposition agréée*, a proposition kindly received.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

### *In* IR.

### FINIR, *to finish.*

INFIN. PRES. Finir, *to finish.* PAST, Avoir fini, *to have finished.*
PART. PRES. Finissant, *finishing.* PAST, Fini, finie, *finished;* ayant fini, *having finished.*

| PRESENT. | PRETERITE INDEFINITE. |
|---|---|
| *I finish.* | *I have finished.* |
| Je finis | J'ai fini |
| Tu finis | Tu as fini |
| Il finit | Il a fini |
| Nous finissons | Nous avons fini |
| Vous finissez | Vous avez fini |
| Ils finissent. | Ils ont fini. |
| **IMPERFECT.** | **PLUPERFECT.** |
| *I finished.* | *I had finished.* |
| Je finissais | J'avais fini |
| Tu finissais | Tu avais fini |
| Il finissait | Il avait fini |
| Nous finissions | Nous avions fini |
| Vous finissiez | Vous aviez fini |
| Ils finissaient. | Ils avaient fini. |
| **PRETERITE DEFINITE.** | **PRETERITE ANTERIOR.** |
| *I finished.* | *I had finished.* |
| Je finis | J'eus fini |
| Tu finis | Tu eus fini |
| Il finit | Il eut fini |
| Nous finîmes | Nous eûmes fini |
| Vous finîtes | Vous eûtes fini |
| Ils finirent. | Ils eurent fini. |
| **FUTURE ABSOLUTE.** | **FUTURE ANTERIOR.** |
| *I shall finish.* | *I shall have finished.* |
| Je finirai | J'aurai fini |
| Tu finiras | Tu auras fini |
| Il finira | Il aura fini |
| Nous finirons | Nous aurons fini |
| Vous finirez | Vous aurez fini |
| Ils finiront. | Ils auront fini. |

## CONDITIONAL

| PRESENT. | PRETERITE. |
|---|---|
| *I would finish.* | *I would have finished.* |
| Je finirais | J'aurais fini |
| Tu finirais | Tu aurais fini |
| Il finirait | Il aurait fini |
| Nous finirions | Nous aurions fini |
| Vous finiriez | Vous auriez fini |
| Ils finiraient. | Ils auraient fini. |

## IMPERATIVE.

| *Finish.* | *Let us finish.* |
|---|---|
| (No first person.) | Finissons |
| Finis | Finissez |
| Qu'il finisse. | Qu'ils finissent. |

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

| PRESENT. | PRETERITE. |
|---|---|
| *That I may finish.* | *That I may have finished.* |
| Que je finisse | Que j'aie fini |
| Que tu finisses | Que tu aies fini |
| Qu'il finisse | Qu'il ait fini |
| Que nous finissions | Que nous ayons fini |
| Que vous finissiez | Que ayez fini |
| Qu'ils finissent. | Qu'ils aient fini. |

| IMPERFECT. | PLUPERFECT.[1] |
|---|---|
| *That I might finish.* | *That I might have finished.* |
| Que je finisse | Que j'eusse fini |
| Que tu finisses | Que tu eusses fini |
| Qu'il finît | Qu'il eût fini |
| Que nous finissions | Que nous eussions fini |
| Que vous finissiez | Que vous eussiez fini |
| Qu'ils finissent. | Qu'ils eussent fini. |

[1] This form of the verb, omitting the conjunction *que*, is often used instead of the Preterite Conditional.

### OBSERVATIONS ON SOME OF THE VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

1. The Verb *Bénir*, to bless, has two past participles ; *bénit, bénite*, consecrated by religious ceremony ; as, *de l'eau bénite*, holy water ; *du pain bénit*, the consecrated wafer : and *béni, bénie*, blessed, having the usual signification of the verb ; as, *un peuple béni de Dieu*, a people blessed of God ; *une famille bénie du ciel*, a family blessed of heaven.

2. *Haïr*, to hate, takes two points over the ï throughout its conjugation, except in the three persons singular of the Present Indicative, *je hais, tu hais, il hait*, I hate, etc. ; and in the second person singular of the Imperative, *hais*, hate, or do thou hate.

*Remark.* In the first and second persons plural of the preterite definite, *nous haïmes, vous haïtes*, we hated, you hated ; and in the third person singular of the Subjunctive Imperfect, *qu'il haït*, that he might hate, the two points over the ï take the place of the circumflex accent generally used.

3. The verb *Fleurir*, to bloom, used figuratively in the signification of *to flourish*, as in speaking of the prosperity of an empire, of the sciences, etc., makes *florissait* in the Imperfect of the Indicative, and *florissant* the participle present : as, *L'empire des Assyriens florissait à cette époque ; alors les sciences florissant en Egypte.* The empire of the Assyrians *flourished* at that epoch ; the sciences then *flourishing* in Egypt.

# THIRD CONJUGATION.

## *In* OIR.

## RECEVOIR, *to receive.*

INFIN. PRES. Recevoir, *to receive.* PAST, Avoir reçu, *to have received.*
PART. PRES. Recevant, *receiving.* PAST, Reçu, reçue, *received;* ayant reçu, *having received.*

### INDICATIVE.

| PRESENT. | PRETERITE INDEFINITE. |
|---|---|
| *I receive.* | *I have received.* |
| Je reçois | J'ai reçu |
| Tu reçois | Tu as reçu |
| Il reçoit | Il a reçu |
| Nous recevons | Nous avons reçu |
| Vous recevez | Vous avez reçu |
| Ils reçoivent. | Ils ont reçu. |
| **IMPERFECT.** | **PLUPERFECT.** |
| *I received.* | *I had received.* |
| Je recevais | J'avais reçu |
| Tu recevais | Tu avais reçu |
| Il recevait | Il avait reçu |
| Nous recevions | Nous avions reçu |
| Vous receviez | Vous aviez reçu |
| Ils recevaient. | Ils avaient reçu. |
| **PRETERITE DEFINITE.** | **PRETERITE ANTERIOR.** |
| *I received.* | *I had received.* |
| Je reçus | J'eus reçu |
| Tu reçus | Tu eus reçu |
| Il reçut | Il eut reçu |
| Nous reçûme | Nous eûmes reçu |
| Vous reçûtes | Vous eûtes reçu |
| Ils reçurent. | Ils eurent reçu. |

| FUTURE ABSOLUTE. | FUTURE ANTERIOR. |
|---|---|
| *I shall receive.* | *I shall have received.* |
| Je recevrai | J'aurai reçu |
| Tu recevras | Tu auras reçu |
| Il recevra | Il aura reçu |
| Nous recevrons | Nous aurons reçu |
| Vous recevrez | Vous aurez reçu |
| Ils recevront | Ils auront reçu. |

## CONDITIONAL.

| PRESENT. | PRETERITE. |
|---|---|
| *I should receive.* | *I should have received.* |
| Je recevrais | J'aurais reçu |
| Tu recevrais | Tu aurais reçu |
| Il recevrait | Il aurait reçu |
| Nous recevrions | Nous aurions reçu |
| Vous recevriez | Vous auriez reçu |
| Ils recevraient. | Ils auraient reçu. |

## IMPERATIVE.

| *Receive.* | *Let us receive.* |
|---|---|
| (No first person.) | Recevons |
| Reçois | Recevez |
| Qu'il reçoive. | Qu'ils reçoivent. |

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

| PRESENT. | PRETERITE. |
|---|---|
| *That I may receive.* | *That I may have received.* |
| Que je reçoive | Que j'aie reçu |
| Que tu reçoives | Que tu aies reçu |
| Qu'il reçoive | Qu'il ait reçu |
| Que nous recevions | Que nous ayons reçu |
| Que vous receviez | Que vous ayez reçu |
| Qu'ils reçoivent. | Qu'ils aient reçu. |

| IMPERFECT. | PLUPERFECT.[1] |
|---|---|
| *That I might receive.* | *That I might have received.* |
| Que je reçusse | Que j'eusse reçu |
| Que tu reçusses | Que tu eusses reçu |
| Qu'il reçût | Qu'il eût reçu |
| Que nous reçussions | Que nous eussions reçu |
| Que vous reçussiez | Que vous eussiez reçu |
| Qu'ils reçussent. | Qu'ils eussent reçu. |

[1] This form of the verb, omitting the conjunction *que*, is often used instead of the Preterite Conditional.

# FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## *In* RE.

## RENDRE, *to render.*

INFIN. PRES. Rendre, *to render.* PAST, Avoir rendu, *to have rendered*
PART. PRES. Rendant, *rendering.* PAST, Rendu, rendue, *rendered:* ayant rendu, *having rendered.*

### INDICATIVE.

| PRESENT. | PRETERITE INDEFINITE. |
|---|---|
| *I render.* | *I have rendered.* |
| Je rends | J'ai rendu |
| Tu rends | Tu as rendu |
| Il rend | Il a rendu |
| Nous rendons | Nous avons rendu |
| Vous rendez | Vous avez rendu |
| Ils rendent. | Ils ont rendu. |
| IMPERFECT. | PLUPERFECT. |
| *I rendered.* | *I had rendered.* |
| Je rendais | J'avais rendu |
| Tu rendais | Tu avais rendu |
| Il rendait | Il avait rendu |
| Nous rendions | Nous avions rendu |
| Vous rendiez | Vous aviez rendu |
| Ils rendaient. | Ils avaient rendu. |
| PRETERITE DEFINITE. | PRETERITE ANTERIOR. |
| *I rendered.* | *I had rendered.* |
| Je rendis | J'eus rendu |
| Tu rendis | Tu eus rendu |
| Il rendit | Il eut rendu |
| Nous rendîmes | Nous eûmes rendu |
| Vous rendîtes | Vous eûtes rendu |
| Ils rendirent. | Ils eurent rendu. |
| FUTURE ABSOLUTE. | FUTURE ANTERIOR. |
| *I will render.* | *I shall have rendered.* |
| Je rendrai | J'aurai rendu |
| Tu rendras | Tu auras rendu |
| Il rendra | Il aura rendu |
| Nous rendrons | Nous aurons rendu |
| Vous rendrez | Vous aurez rendu |
| Ils rendront. | Ils auront rendu. |

## CONDITIONAL.

| PRESENT. | PRETERITE. |
|---|---|
| *I would render.* | *I would have rendered.* |
| Je rendrais | J'aurais rendu |
| Tu rendrais | Tu aurais rendu |
| Il rendrait | Il aurait rendu |
| Nous rendrions | Nous aurions rendu |
| Vous rendriez | Vous auriez rendu |
| Ils rendraient. | Ils auraient rendu. |

## IMPERATIVE.

| *Render.* | *Let us render.* |
|---|---|
| (No first person.) | Rendons |
| Rends | Rendez |
| Qu'il rende. | Qu'ils rendent. |

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

| PRESENT. | PRETERITE. |
|---|---|
| *That I may render.* | *That I may have rendered.* |
| Que je rende | Que j'aie rendu |
| Que tu rendes | Que tu aies rendu |
| Qu'il rende | Qu'il ait rendu |
| Que nous rendions | Que nous ayons rendu |
| Que vous rendiez | Que vous ayez rendu |
| Qu'ils rendent. | Qu'ils aient rendu. |

| IMPERFECT. | PLUPERFECT.[1] |
|---|---|
| *That I might render.* | *That I might have rendered.* |
| Que je rendisse | Que j'eusse rendu |
| Que tu rendisses | Que tu eusses rendu |
| Qu'il rendît | Qu'il eût rendu |
| Que nous rendissions | Que nous eussions rendu |
| Que vous rendissiez | Que vous eussiez rendu |
| Qu'ils rendissent. | Qu'ils eussent rendu. |

[1] This form of the verb, omitting the conjunction *que*, is often used instead of the Preterite Conditional.

### OBSERVATIONS UPON THE VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Among the verbs of this conjugation, ending in *dre*, some make the three persons singular in *ds, ds, d ;* as, *je rends, tu rends, il rend :* and others in *s, s, t ;* as, *je joins, tu joins, il joint.*

Rule. In order to know when to write *ds, ds, d,* or *s, s, t,* look at the termination of the past participle ; if its final consonant is *t,* use *s, s, t ;* if it is not *t,* use *ds, ds, d.* Thus, write *je plains, tu plains, il plaint,* I complain, etc. ; *je joins, tu joins, il joint,* I join, etc., because their past participles are *plaint* and *joint,* ending in *t :* and *je confonds, tu confonds, il confond,* I confound, etc. ; *je couds, tu couds, il coud,* I sew, etc., because their past participles are *confondu* and *cousu,* which do not end in *t.*

## VERBS

### CONJUGATED INTERROGATIVELY.

To render the conjugation of the verbs familiar to the pupil, it is necessary that he should conjugate them interrogatively. To this end, a model or paradigm of the four conjugations is here given.

#### PRESENT.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Aimé-je ?[1] | Finis-je ? | Reçois-je ? | ——— |
| Aimes-tu ? | Finis tu ? | Reçois-tu ? | Rends-tu ? |
| Aime-t-il ? | Finit-il ? | Reçoit-il ? | Rend-il ? |
| Aimons-nous ? | Finissons-nous ? | Recevons-nous ? | Rendons-nous ? |
| Aimez-vous ? | Finissez-vous ? | Recevez-vous ? | Rendez-vous ? |
| Aiment-ils ? | Finissent-ils ? | Reçoivent-ils ? | Rendent-ils ? |

#### IMPERFECT.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Aimais-je ? | Finissais-je ? | Recevais-je ? | Rendais-je ? |
| Aimais-tu ? | Finissais-tu ? | Recevais-tu ? | Rendais-tu ? |
| Aimait-il ? | Finissait-il ? | Recevait-il ? | Rendait-il ? |
| Aimions-nous ? | Finissions-nous ? | Recevions-nous ? | Rendions-nous ? |
| Aimiez-vous ? | Finissiez-vous ? | Receviez-vous ? | Rendiez-vous ? |
| Aimaient-ils ? | Finissaient-ils ? | Recevaient-ils ? | Rendaient-ils ? |

[1] The negative interrogation is made by placing *ne* before the verb, and *pas* or *point* after the pronoun.

### PRETERITE DEFINITE.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Aimai-je? | Finis-je? | Reçus-je? | Rendis-jé? |
| Aimas-tu? | Finis-tu? | Reçus-tu? | Rendis-tu? |
| Aima-t-il? | Finit-il? | Reçut-il? | Rendit-il? |
| Aimâmes-nous? | Finîmes-nous? | Reçûmes-nous? | Rendîmes-nous? |
| Aimâtes-vous? | Finîtes-vous? | Reçûtes-vous? | Rendîtes-vous? |
| Aimèrent-ils? | Finirent-ils? | Reçurent-ils? | Rendirent-ils? |

### PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Ai-je aimé?[1] | Ai-je fini? | Ai-je reçu? | Ai-je rendu? |
| As-tu aimé? | As-tu fini? | As-tu reçu? | As-tu rendu? |
| A-t-il aimé? | A-t-il fini? | A-t-il reçu? | A-t-il rendu? |
| Avons-nous aimé? | Avons-nous fini? | Avons-nous reçu? | Avons-nous rendu? |
| Avez-vous aimé? | Avez-vous fini? | Avez-vous reçu? | Avez-vous rendu? |
| Ont-ils aimé? | Ont-ils fini? | Ont-ils reçu? | Ont-ils rendu? |

### PLUPERFECT.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Avais-je aimé? | Avais-je fini? | Avais-je reçu? | Avais-je rendu? |
| Avais-tu aimé? | Avais-tu fini? | Avais-tu reçu? | Avais-tu rendu? |
| Avait-il aimé? | Avait-il fini? | Avait-il reçu? | Avait-il rendu? |
| Avions-nous aimé? | Avions-nous fini? | Avions-nous reçu? | Avions-nous rendu? |
| Aviez-vous aimé? | Aviez-vous fini? | Aviez-vous reçu? | Aviez-vous rendu? |
| Avaient-ils aimé? | Avaient-ils fini? | Avaient-ils reçu? | Avaient-ils rendu? |

### FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Aimerai-je? | Finirai-je? | Recevrai-je? | Rendrai-je? |
| Aimeras-tu? | Finiras-tu? | Recevras-tu? | Rendras-tu? |
| Aimera-t-il? | Finira-t-il? | Recevra-t-il? | Rendra-t-il |
| Aimerons-nous? | Finirons-nous? | Recevrons-nous? | Rendrons-nous? |
| Aimerez-vous? | Finirez-vous? | Recevrez-vous? | Rendrez-vous? |
| Aimeront-ils? | Finiront-ils? | Recevront-ils? | Rendront-ils? |

### FUTURE ANTERIOR.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Aurai-je aimé? | Aurai-je fini? | Aurai-je reçu? | Aurai-je rendu? |
| Auras-tu aimé? | Auras-tu fini? | Auras-tu reçu? | Auras-tu rendu? |
| Aura-t-il aimé? | Aura-t-il fini? | Aura-t-il reçu? | Aura-t-il rendu? |
| Aurons-nous aimé? | Aurons-nous fini? | Aurons-nous reçu? | Aurons-nous rendu? |
| Aurez-vous aimé? | Aurez-vous fini? | Aurez-vous reçu? | Aurez-vous rendu? |
| Auront-ils aimé? | Auront-ils fini? | Auront-ils reçu? | Auront-ils rendu? |

[1] In negative interrogations, when the verb is in a compound tense, the second adverb of negation is placed before the past participle; as, N'ai-je *pas* aimé? n'avais-je *pas* aimé? etc. If there be a pronoun in the sentence, governed by the verb, it must be placed between the first adverb of negation and the verb; as, *Ne vous a-t-il pas aimé?* etc.

## CONDITIONAL.

### PRESENT.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Aimerais-je ? | Finirais-je ? | Recevrais-je ? | Rendrais-je ? |
| Aimerais-tu ? | Finirais-tu ? | Recevrais-tu ? | Rendrais-tu ? |
| Aimerait-il ? | Finirait-il ? | Recevrait-il ? | Rendrait-il ? |
| Aimerions-nous ? | Finirions-nous ? | Recevrions-nous ? | Rendrions-nous ? |
| Aimeriez-vous ? | Finiriez-vous ? | Recevriez-vous ? | Rendriez-vous ? |
| Aimeraient ils ? | Finiraient-ils ? | Recevraient-ils ? | Rendraient-ils ? |

### PRETERITE.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Aurais-je aimé ? | Aurais-je fini ? | Aurais-je reçu ? | Aurais-je rendu ? |
| Aurais-tu aimé ? | Aurais-tu fini ? | Aurais-tu reçu ? | Aurais-tu rendu ? |
| Aurait-il aimé ? | Aurait-il fini ? | Aurait-il reçu ? | Aurait-il rendu ? |
| Aurions-nous, etc. | Aurions-nous, etc. | Aurions-nous, etc. | Aurions-nous, etc. |
| Auriez-vous, etc. | Auriez-vous, etc. | Auriez-vous, etc. | Auriez-vous, etc. |
| Auraient-ils, etc. | Auraient-ils, etc. | Auraient-ils, etc. | Auraient-ils, etc. |

*Or you may say,*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Eussé-je aimé ? | Eussé-je fini ? | Eussé-je reçu ? | Eussé-je rendu ? |
| Eusses-tu aimé ? | Eusses-tu fini ? | Eusses-tu reçu ? | Eusses-tu rendu ? |
| Eût-il aimé ? | Eût-il fini ? | Eût-il reçu ? | Eût-il rendu ? |
| Eussions-nous, etc. | Eussions-nous, etc. | Eussions-nous, etc. | Eussions-nous, etc. |
| Eussiez-vous, etc. | Eussiez-vous, etc. | Eussiez-vous, etc. | Eussiez vous, etc. |
| Eussent-ils, etc. | Eussent-ils, etc. | Eussent-ils, etc. | Eussent-ils, etc. |

From this table, we draw the following remarks.

1. Some moods and tenses are not employed interrogatively ; which are the *Preterite Anterior*, the *Imperative*, the *Subjunctive*, and the *Infinitive*.

2. The verb *rendre* is not used interrogatively in the first person singular of the present indicative ; the same is true in all the conjugations of those verbs, which in this tense and person have but one syllable. Thus good usage does not permit us to say ; *prends-je ? vends-je ? tais-je ? mens-je ? sers-je ?* etc. We are obliged to transpose the phrase and say ; *est-ce que je prends ?* is it that I take ? *est-ce que je tais ?* is it that I am silent ? *est-ce que je mens ?* is it that I lie ? etc. Nevertheless, good usage authorizes us to say ; *fais-je ? dis-je ? dois-je ? puis-je ? ai-je ? suis-je ?*

3. A mark of union is placed between the verb and the subject, when the verb is in a simple tense ; as, *finissais-je ?*

did I finish ? *rendis-je ?* did I render ? and a mark of union between the auxiliary and the subject, when the verb is in a compound tense ; as, *avait-il aimé ?* had he loved ? *eurent-ils reçu ?* had they received ?

4. When a verb ends with a vowel, the subject *il, elle, on,* he, she, they, is preceded by the letter *t,* which is placed between two marks of union ; as, *aime-t-il ? aime-t-elle ? a-t-on aimé ?* does he love ? does she love ? have they loved ?

5. An *e* mute at the end of a verb, is changed into the *close é* before the pronoun *je ; aimé-je ? eussé-je aimé ?* love I ? should I have loved ?

6. When you are in doubt whether to write *aimé-je ?* do I love ? or, *aimai-je ?* did I love ? their pronunciation being exactly the same, you should ask whether, in laying aside the interrogative form, you have *j'aime,* or *j'aimai.* In the first instance, it is the present indicative ; you want *aimé-je.?* In the second, it is the preterite definite, and you must write *aimai-je ?*

EXAMPLE. *Chanté-je maintenant ?* do I sing now ? that is, *est-ce que je chante maintenant ?* is it that I sing now ? this is the indicative present. *Chantai-je hier ?* did I sing yesterday ? that is, *est-ce que je chantai hier ?* is it that I sang yesterday ? this is the preterite definite. In this way, you will perceive, that it is not proper to write *eussai-je ? puissai-je ? dussai-je ?* because the conjugation never gives *j'eussai, je puissai, je dussai.*

### OF THE TENSES AND THEIR FORMATION.

The tenses of verbs are divided into *Primitive* and *Derivative.*

The *Primitive* are those which serve to form all the rest ; they are five in number.

The *Present of the Infinitive.*
The *Participle Present.*
The *Participle Past.*
The *Present of the Indicative,* and
The *Preterite Definite.*

The *Derivative* tenses are those formed from the *Primitive.*

From the INFINITIVE are formed two tenses.

1. The *Future Absolute*, by changing *r*, *re*, *oir*, into *rai*; as, *aimer, j'aimerai ; rendre, je rendrai ; recevoir, je recevrai.*

2. The *Conditional Present*, by changing *r*, *re*, *oir*, into *rais* ; as, *aimer, j'aimerais ; rendre, je rendrais ; recevoir, je recevrais.*

From the PARTICIPLE PRESENT are formed three tenses.

1. The three persons plural of the *Indicative Present*, by changing *ant* into *ons*, *ez*, and *ent* ; as, *donnant*, giving, makes *nous donnons, vous donnez, ils donnent*, etc.

2. The *Imperfect of the Indicative*, by changing *ant* into *ais* ; as, *donnant, je donnais ; finissant, je finissais.*

3. The *Present of the Subjunctive*, by changing *ant* into *e* ; as, *donnant, je donne ; finissant, je finisse ; rendant, je rende :* except the verbs of the third conjugation, which change *evant* into *oive* ; as, *apercevant, que j'aperçoive.*

From the PAST PARTICIPLE are formed all the compound tenses, by the help of *avoir*, to have, or *être*, to be ; as, *j'ai estimé*, I have esteemed ; *je suis estimé*, I am esteemed ; *il avait fini*, he had finished ; *il était fini*, it was finished, etc.

From the INDICATIVE PRESENT is formed the *Imperative*, by suppressing the pronouns, which serve as subjects ; as, *je donne, donne ; nous donnons, donnons*, etc.

From the PRETERITE DEFINITE is formed the *Subjunctive Imperfect*, by changing *ai* into *asse*, for the first conjugation, and by adding *se* in the others ; as, *je donnai, que je donnasse ; je finis, que je finisse ; je reçus, que je reçusse.*

### IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS.

*Irregular* verbs are those whose terminations, either in the primitive or derivative tenses, do not exactly coincide with those of the verb, which serves for their model.

Thus a verb may be irregular in two ways ; in its primitive tenses, and in its derivative. For example ; *bouillir*, to boil, is irregular in its primitive tenses, because it makes

its participle present *bouillant*, and its indicative present, *je bous* ; and not *bouillissant*, *je bouillis*, by taking the terminations *issant*, *is*, which are those of the verb *finir*, to finish, the model of the second conjugation. On the contrary, *envoyer*, to send, is irregular in two of its derivative tenses ; for, instead of making in the future and the conditional present, *j'envoierai*, *j'envoierais*, by changing, like the verb *aimer*, its model, *r* into *rai* and *rais*, it makes *j'enverrai*, *j'enverrais*.

However irregular a verb may be, its irregularities are confined to the simple tenses.

*Defective* verbs are those which are deficient in some of their tenses, or some of whose persons are not sanctioned by good usage ; such as the verb *choir*, to fall, which is only used in the infinitive and the past participle. Such, also, are those impersonal verbs, which are used only in the third person singular ; as, *il importe*, it is of consequence.

When a primitive tense is wanting, the derivatives of that tense are also wanting. Thus, *absoudre*, to absolve, having no preterite definite, has no imperfect subjunctive. In the same way, *braire*, to bray, having no other primitive tense than the infinitive *braire*, and the indicative present, *il brait*, has neither imperfect indicative, nor present subjunctive, nor compound tense, nor, in a word, any of the tenses, which are derived from the *present participle*, the *past participle*, and the *preterite definite*, the three primitive tenses wanting. This rule has some exceptions ; they are, however, very few.

---

## VOCABULARY

### OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS IN ALPHABETICAL ORDER.

### A.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Abattre,** | *to pull down.* | Like battre. |
| **Absoudre,** | *to absolve.* | Like résoudre. |

It has neither Pret. Ind. nor Imp. Subj. Its past participles are *absous*, *absoute*.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Abstraire, | *to abstract.* | Like traire. |
| Accourir, | *to run to.* | Like courir. |
| Accroire, | *to make believe.* | Like croire. |

It is used only in the infinitive with *faire ;* as, *faire accroire*, to impose upon.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Accroître, | *to accrue.* | Like croître. |
| Accueillir, | *to welcome.* | Like cueillir. |

## ACQUÉRIR, *to acquire.*

*Participles:* Acquérant, acquis, se.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | J'acqui-ers, iers, ert ; | Nous acqué-rons, rez, acquièrent. |
| Imp. | J'acquér-ais, ais, ait ; | Nous acquér-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | J'acquis, is, it ; | Nous acqu-îmes, îtes, irent. |
| Fut. | J'acquer-rai, ras, ra ; | Nous acquer-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | J'acquer-rais, rais, rait ; | Nous acquér-rions, riez, raient |
| S. P. | J'acqu-ière, ières, ière ; | Nous acquér-ions, iez, acquièrent. |
| Imp. | J'acqu-isse, isses, ît ; | Nous acqui-ssions, ssiez, ssent. |
| Imper. | Acquiers, qu'il acquière ; | Acquérons, rez, qu'ils acquièrent. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Admettre, | *to admit.* | Like mettre. |

## ALLER, *to go.*

*Participles:* Allant, allé, ée.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je vais, vas, va ; | Nous all-ons, ez, vont. |
| Imp. | J'all-ais, ais, ait ; | Nous all-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | J'all-ai, as, a ; | Nous all-âmes, âtes, èrent. |
| Fut. | J'irai, iras, ira ; | Nous i-rons, rez, ront |
| Cond. | J'irais, irais, irait ; | Nous i-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. | J'aille, ailles, aille ; | Nous all-ions, iez, aillent. |
| Imp. | J'all-asse, asses, ât ; | Nous allass-ions, iez, ent. |
| Imper. | Va, qu'il aille ; | Allons, allez, qu'ils aillent. |

## S'EN ALLER, *to go away.*

*Participles:* S'en allant, s'en allé, ée.

### INDICATIVE.

| | *Simple Tenses.* | *Compound Tenses.* |
|---|---|---|
| Present. | Je m'en vais ; | Je m'en suis allé. |
| | Tu t'en vas ; | Tu t'en es allé. |
| | Il s'en va ; | Il s'en est allé. |
| | Nous nous en allons ; | Nous nous en sommes allés. |
| | Vous vous en allez ; | Vous vous en êtes allés. |
| | Ils s'en vont. | Ils s'en sont allés. |
| Imp. | Je m'en allais, *etc.* ; | Je m'en étais allé. |
| Pret. | Je m'en allai, *etc.* ; | Je m'en fus allé. |
| Fut. | Je m'en irai, *etc.* ; | Je m'en serai allé. |
| Cond. | Je m'en irais, *etc.* ; | Je m'en serais allé. |

### SUBJUNCTIVE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Que je m'en aille, *etc.* ; | Que je m'en sois allé. |
| Imp. | Que je m'en allasse, *etc.* ; | Que je m'en fusse allé. |

### IMPERATIVE.

| *Singular.* | *Plural.* |
|---|---|
| ——— | Allons-nous-en. |
| Va-t'-en ; | Allez-vous-en. |
| Qu'il s'en aille ; | Qu'ils s'en aillent. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Appartenir, | *to belong to.* | Like tenir. |
| Apprendre, | *to learn.* | Like prendre. |
| Assaillir, | *to assail.* | Like tressaillir. |

## ASSEOIR (SE), *to sit down.*

*Participles:* Asseyant, assis, se.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je m'ass-ieds, ieds, ied ; | Nous nous ass-eyons, eyez, eient. |
| Imp. | Je m'assey-ais, ais, ait ; | Nous nous assey-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pres. | Je m'ass-is, is, it ; | Nous nous ass-îmes, îtes, irent. |
| Fut. | Je m assiérai, *or* m'assérai, *or* m'asseyerai, &c. | |
| Cond. | Je m'assiérais, *or* m'assérais, *or* m'asseyerais, &c. | |

Authors are divided about the orthography of these two tenses.

S. P. que Je m'ass-eie, eies, eie ; Nous nous asse-yions, yiez, eient.
Imp. que Je m'ass-isse, isses, ît ; Nous nous assi-ssions, ssiez, ssent.
Imper. Assieds-toi, qu'il s'asseie ; Asseyons-nous, asseyez-vous, qu'ils s'asseient.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Atteindre, | *to attain.* | Like craindre. |
| Attraire, | *to attract.* | Like traire. |
| Avoir, | *to have.* | (See page 29.) |

## B.

### Battre, *to beat.*

*Participles :* Battant, battu, ue.

Pres. Je bats, bats, bat ; Nous bat-tons, tez, tent.
Imp. Je batt-ais, ais, ait ; Nous batt-ions, iez, aient.
Pret. Je bat-tis, tis, tit ; Nous bat-times, tites, tirent.
Fut. Je batt-rai, ras, ra ; Nous batt-rons, rez, ront.
Cond. Je batt-rais, rais, rait ; Nous batt-rions, riez, raient.
S. P. que Je bat-te, tes, te ; Nous bat-tions, tiez, tent.
Imp. que Je bat-tisse, tisses, tît ; Nous bat-tissions, tissiez, tissent.
Imper. Bats, qu'il batte ; Bat-tons, tez, qu'ils battent.

### Boire, *to drink.*

*Participles :* Buvant, bu, ue.

Pres. Je bois, bcis, boit ; Nous bu-vons, vez, boivent.
Imp. Je buv-ais, ais, ait ; Nous buv-ions, iez, aient.
Pret. Je bus, bus, but ; Nous b-ûmes, ûtes, urent.
Fut. Je boi-rai, ras, ra ; Nous boi-rons, rez, ront.
Cond. Je boi-rais, rais, rait ; Nous boi-rions, riez, raient.
S. P. que Je boi-ve, ves, ve ; Nous bu-vions, viez, boivent.
Imp. que Je busse, busses, bût ; Nous bu-ssions, ssiez, ssent.
Imper. Bois, qu'il boive. Bu-vons, vez, qu'ils boivent.

### Bouillir, *to boil.*

*Participles :* Bouillant, bouilli, ie.

Pres. Je bous, bous, bout ; Nous bouill-ons, ez, ent.
Imp. Je bouill-ais, ais, ait ; Nous bouill-ions, iez, aient.
Pret. Je bouill-is, is, it ; Nous bouill-îmes, îtes, irent.
Fut. Je bouilli-rai, ras, ra ; Nous bouilli rons, rez, ront.
Cond. Je bouilli-rais, rais, rait ; Nous bouilli-rions, riez, raient.
S. P. que Je bouill-e, es, e ; Nous bouill-ions, iez, ent.
Imp. que Je bouill-isse, isses, ît ; Nous bouilli-ssions, ssiez, ssent.
Imper. Bous, qu'il bouille ; Bouill-ons, ez, qu'ils bouillent.

**Baire**, *to bray*. Defective. Seldom used except in the third persons of the present, future, and conditional ; *il brait, ils braient ; il braira, ils brairont ; il brairait, ils brairaient.*

Bruire, *to roar*. Defective. Used in the Part. Pres. *Bruyant ;* and the two third persons of the Ind. Imp. *Bruyait, bruyaient.*

## C.

Ceindre, *to gird.* Like craindre.

Choir, *to fall.* Defective. Has only the Part. Past, *Chu, chue.* It is conjugated with the verb *être.*

Circoncire, *to circumcise.* Like confire; except that it makes the participle past, *circoncis.*

Circonscire, *to circumscribe.* Like écrire.

Clore, *to close.* Defective. It has the Part. Past, *clos ;* Ind. Pres. *clos ;* Fut. *clôrai ;* Cond. *clôrais ;* Imper. *clos.*

Combattre, *to combat.* Like battre.

Commettre, *to commit.* Like mettre.

Comparaître, *to appear in court.* Like paraître.

Complaire, *to humor.* Like plaire.

Comprendre, *to understand.* Like prendre.

Compromettre, *to compromise.* Like mettre.

### Conclure, *to conclude.*

*Participles :* Concluant, conclu, ue.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je con-clus, clus, clut ; | Nous conclu-ons, ez, ent. |
| Imp. | Je conclu-ais, ais, ait ; | Nous conclu-ïons, ïez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je conclus, clus, clut ; | Nous concl-ûmes, ûtes, urent. |
| Fut. | Je conclu-rai, ras, ra ; | Nous conclu-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je conclu-rais, rais, rait ; | Nous conclu-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. | Je con-clue, clues, clue ; | Nous conclu-ïons, ïez, ent. |
| Imp. | Je conclu-sse, sses, conclût ; | Nous conclu-ssions, ssiez, ssent. |
| Imper. | Conclus, qu'il conclue ; | Conclu-ons, ez, qu'ils concluent. |

**Concourir**, *to concur.* Like courir.

## CONDUIRE, *to conduct.*

*Participles:* Conduisant, conduit, te.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je cond-uis, uis, uit; | Nous conduis-ons, ez, ent. |
| Imp. | Je conduis-ais, ais, ait; | Nous conduis-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je conduis-is, is, it; | Nous conduis-îmes, îtes, irent. |
| Fut. | Je condui-rai, ras, ra; | Nous condui-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je condui-rais, rais, rait; | Nous condui-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. | Je conduis-e, es, e; | Nous conduis-ions, iez, ent. |
| Imp. | Je conduis-isse, isses, ît; | Nous conduisiss-ions, iez, ent. |
| Imper. | Conduis, qu'il conduise; | Conduisons, ez, qu'ils conduisent. |

## CONFIRE, *to preserve, to pickle.*

*Participles:* Confisant, confit, te.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je conf-is, is, it; | Nous confis-ons, ez, ent. |
| Imp. | Je confis-ais, ais, ait; | Nous confis-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je conf-is, is, it; | Nous conf-îmes, îtes, irent. |
| Fut. | Je confi-rai, ras, ra; | Nous confi-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je confi-rais, rais, rait; | Nous confi-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. | Je confis-e, es, e; | Nous confis-ions, iez, ent. |
| Imp. | Je con-fisse, fisses, fît. | Nous confi-ssions, ssiez, ssent. |
| Imper. | Confis, qu'il confise; | Confisons, ez, qu'ils confisent. |

## CONNAÎTRE, *to know.*

*Participles:* Connaissant, connu, ue.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je conn-ais, ais, ait; | Nous connaiss-ons, ez, ent. |
| Imp. | Je connaiss-ais, ais, ait; | Nous connaiss-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je connus, us, ut; | Nous conn-ûmes, ûtes, urent. |
| Fut. | Je connaît-rai, ras, ra; | Nous connaît-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je connaît-rais, rais, rait; | Nous connaît-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. | Je connaiss-e, es, e; | Nous connaiss-ions, iez, ent. |
| Imp. | Je conn-usse, usses, ût; | Nous connu-ssions, ssiez, ssent. |
| Imper. | Connais, qu'il connaisse; | Connaiss-ons, ez, qu'ils connaissent. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Conquérir, | *to conquer.* | Like acquérir. |
| Consentir, | *to consent.* | Like mentir. |
| Construire, | *to construct.* | Like conduire |
| Contenir, | *to contain.* | Like tenir. |
| Contredire, | *to contradict.* | Like dire; except the second person plural, *contredisez.* |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Contraindre, | *to constrain.* | Like craindre. |
| Contrefaire, | *to counterfeit.* | Like faire. |
| Contrevenir, | *to contravene.* | Like tenir. |

## CONVAINCRE, *to convince.*

*Participles:* Convainquant, convaincu, ue.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je con-vaincs, vaincs, vainc; | Nous convain-quons, quez, quent. |
| Imp. | Je convain-quais, quais, quait; | Nous convain-quions, quiez, quaient. |
| Pret. | Je convain-quis, quis, quit; | Nous convain-quîmes, quîtes, quirent. |
| Fut. | Je convainc-rai, ras, ra; | Nous convainc-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je convainc-rais, rais, rait; | Nous convainc-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. que | Je convain-que, ques, que; | Nous convain-quions, quiez, quent. |
| Imp. que | Je convain-quisse, quisses, quît; | Nous convainqui-ssions, ssiez, ssent. |
| Imper. | Convaincs, qu'il convain-que; | Convain-quons, quez, qu'ils convainquent. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Convenir, | *to agree with.* | Like tenir. |
| Corrompre, | *to corrupt.* | Like rompre. |

## COUDRE, *to sew.*

*Participles:* Cousant, cousu, ue.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je couds, couds, coud; | Nous cou-sons, sez, sent. |
| Imp. | Je cous-ais, ais, ait; | Nous cous-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je cou-sis, sis, sit; | Nous cou-sîmes, sîtes, sirent. |
| Fut. | Je coud-rai, ras, ra; | Nous coud-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je coud-rais, rais, rait; | Nous coud-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. que | Je cou-se, ses, se; | Nous cou-sions, siez, sent. |
| Imp. que | Je cou-sisses, sisses, sît; | Nous cousi-ssions, ssiez, ssent. |
| Imper. | Couds, qu'ils couse. | Cou-sons, sez, qu'ils cousent. |

## COURIR, *to run.*

*Participles:* Courant, couru, ue.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je cours, cours, court; | Nous cour-ons, ez, ent. |
| Imp. | Je cour-ais, ais, ait; | Nous cour-ions, iez, aient. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pret. | Je cour-us, us, ut; | Nous cour-ûmes, ûtes, urent. |
| Fut. | Je cour-rai, ras, ra; | Nous cour-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je cou-rais, rais, rait; | Nous cour-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. | que Je cour-e, es, e; | Nous cour-ions, iez, ent. |
| Imp. | que Je cou-russe, russes, rût; | Nous couru-ssions, ssiez, ssent. |
| Imper. | Cours, qu'il coure; | Cour-ons, ez, qu'ils courent. |

Couvrir, *to cover.* Like ouvrir.

## CRAINDRE, *to fear.*

*Participles:* Craignant, craint, te.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je crains, crains, craint; | Nous craign-ons, ez, ent. |
| Imp. | Je craign-ais, ais, ait; | Nous craign-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je craign-is, is, it; | Nous craign-îmes, îtes, irent. |
| Fut. | Je craind-rai, ras, ra; | Nous craind-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je craind-rais, rais, rait; | Nous craind-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. | que Je craign-e, es, e; | Nous craign-ions, iez, ent. |
| Imp. | que Je craign-isse, isses, ît; | Nous craign-issions, issiez, issent. |
| Imper. | Crains, qu'il craigne; | Craign-ons, ez, qu'ils craignent. |

## CROIRE, *to believe.*

*Participles:* Croyant, cru, ue.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je crois, crois, croit; | Nous croy-ons, ez, croient. |
| Imp. | Je croy-ais, ais, ait; | Nous croy-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je crus, crus, crut; | Nous cr-ûmes, ûtes, urent. |
| Fut. | Je croi-rai, ras, ra; | Nous croi-rons, rez, ront; |
| Cond. | Je croi-rais, rais, rait; | Nous croi-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. | que Je croie, croies, croie; | Nous croy-ions, iez, ient. |
| Imp. | que Je crusse, crusses, crût; | Nous cru-ssions, ssiez, ssent. |
| Imper. | Crois, qu'il croie; | Croy-ons, ez, qu'ils croient. |

## CROÎTRE, *to grow.*

*Participles:* Croissant, cru, ue.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je croîs, crois, croît; | Nous crois-sons, sez, sent. |
| Imp. | Je croiss-ais, ais, ait; | Nous croiss-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je crus, crus, crut; | Nous crûmes, crûtes, crurent. |
| Fut. | Je croît-rai, ras, ra; | Nous croît-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je croît-rais, rais, rait; | Nous croît-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. | que Je croiss-e, es, e; | Nous crois-sions, siez, sent. |
| Imp. | que Je crusse, crusses, crût; | Nous crus-sions, siez, sent. |
| Imper. | Croîs, qu'il croisse; | Crois-sons, sez, qu'ils croissent. |

### CUEILLIR, *to gather.*

*Participles:* Cueillant, cueilli, ie.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je cueill-e, es, e ; | Nous cueill-ons, ez, ent. |
| Imp. | Je cueill-ais, ais, ait ; | Nous cueill-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je cueill-is, is, it ; | Nous cueill-îmes, îtes irent. |
| Fut. | Je cueille-rai, ras, ra ; | Nous cueille-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je cueille-rais, rais, rait ; | Nous cueille-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. que | Je cueill-e, es, e ; | Nous cueill-ions, iez, ent. |
| Imp. que | Je cueill-isse, isses, ît ; | Nous cueilli-ssions, ssiez, ssent. |
| Imper. | Cueille, qu'il cueille ; | Cueill-ons, ez, qu'ils cueillent. |

**Cuire,** *to cook.* Like conduire.

## D.

**Débattre,** *to debate.* Like battre.

### DÉCHOIR, *to decay.*

*Part. Pres.* (wanting). *Past:* Déchu, ue.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je dé-chois, chois, choit ; | Nous décho-yons, yez, ient. |
| Imp. | Je déchoi-ais, ais, ait ; | Nous déchoy-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je dé-chus, chus, ut ; | Nous déch-ûmes, ûtes, urent. |
| Fut. | Je décher-rai, ras, ra ; | Nous décher-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je décher-rais, rais, rait ; | Nous décher-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. que | Je de-choie, choies, choie ; | Nous décho-yions, yiez, ient. |
| Imp. que | Je dech-usse, usses, ût ; | Nous déchuss-ions, iez, ent. |

(No imperative.)

**Déclore,** *to unclose.* Defective. Like clore.
**Découdre,** *to unsew.* Like coudre.
**Découvrir,** *to discover.* Like ouvrir.
**Décrire,** *to describe.* Like écrire.
**Décroître,** *to decrease.* Like croître.
**Dédire,** *to unsay.* Like dire ; except in the second person plural, which is *vous dédisez.*
**Déduire,** *to deduct.* Like conduire.
**Défaillir,** *to faint.* Now used only in the plural of Ind. Pres. ; *nous défaillons, ils défaillent.* Imperfect, *défaillais.* Pret. *défaillis.* Pret. Indefinite, *j'ai défaillis.* Inf. *défaillir.*
**Défaire,** *to undo.* Like faire.
**Démentir,** *to belie.* Like mentir.
**Démettre (se),** *to resign.* Like mettre.

Démouvoir, *to make one desist.* A law term ; used only in the infinitive.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Départir, | *to distribute.* | Like mentir. |
| Déplaire, | *to displease.* | Like plaire. |
| Déprendre, | *to separate.* | Like prendre. |
| Désapprendre, | *to unlearn.* | Like prendre. |
| Desservir, | *to clear a table.* | Like servir. |
| Détenir, | *to detain.* | Like tenir. |
| Détruire, | *to destroy.* | Like conduire. |
| Dévenir, | *to become.* | Like tenir. |
| Dévêtir, | *to divest.* | Like revêtir ; generally used as a reflective verb. |

## DIRE, *to say.*

*Participles :* Disant, dit, te.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je dis, dis, dit ; | Nous disons, dites, disent. |
| Imp. | Je dis-ais, ais, ait ; | Nous dis-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je dis, dis, dit ; | Nous dîmes, dîtes, dirent. |
| Fut. | Je di-rai, ras, ra ; | Nous di-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je di-rais, rais, rait ; | Nous di-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. | Je di-se, ses, se ; | Nous di-sons, siez, sent. |
| Imp. | Je disse, disses, dît ; | Nous di-ssions, ssiez, ssent. |
| Imper. | Dis, qu'il dise ; | Disons, dites, qu'ils disent. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Discourir, | *to discourse.* | Like courir. |
| Disconvenir, | *to disagree.* | Like tenir. |
| Disparaître, | *to disappear.* | Like connaître. |
| Dissoudre, | *to dissolve.* | Like absoudre. |
| Distraire, | *to divert.* | Like traire. |
| Dormir, | *to sleep.* | Like mentir. |

## E.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Ebattre (se), | *to be merry.* | Like battre. |
| Ebouillir, | *to boil away.* | Like bouillir. This verb is used only in the compound tenses ; as, *Cette sauce est trop ébouillie*, this sauce is too much boiled away. |

Echoir, *to happen, to expire.* Defective. It has in use the Ind. Pres. *Il échoit ;* Pret. *Il échut ;* Fut. *Il écherra ;* Cond. *Il écherrait ;* Inf. *échoir ;* Subj. Imp. *Que j'échusse,* etc. Participles, *écheant, échu.*

Eclore, *be hatched, to blow like a flower.* Defective. **Ind.** Pres. *Il éclôt, ils éclosent ;* Fut. *Il éclôra, ils éclôront ;* Cond. *Il éclorait, ils écloraient ;* Subj. Pres. *Qu'il éclose, qu'ils éclosent.*

ECRIRE, *to write.*

*Participles :* Ecrivant, écrit, te.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | J'é-cris, cris, crit ; | Nous écri-vons, vez, vent. |
| Imp. | J'écriv-ais, ais, ait ; | Nous écriv-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | J'écri-vis, vis, vit ; | Nous écri-vîmes, vîtes, virent. |
| Fut. | J'écri-rai, ras, ra ; | Nous écri-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | J'écri-rais, rais, rait ; | Nous écri-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P | J'écri-ve, ves, ve ; | Nous écri-vions, viez, vent. |
| Imp que | J'écri-visse, visses, vît ; | Nous écrivi-ssions, ssiez, ssent. |
| Imper. | Ecris, qu'il écrive ; | Ecri-vons, vez, qu'ils écrivent. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Elire, | *to elect.* | Like lire. |
| Emboire (se), | *to imbibe.* | A technical term used in painting. Like boire. |
| Emoudre, | *to whet.* | (Speaking of knives and the like.) Like moudre. |
| Emouvoir, | *to excite, to move.* | Like mouvoir. |
| Empreindre, | *to imprint.* | Like craindre. |
| Enceindre, | *to enclose.* | Like craindre. |
| Enclore, | *to enclose.* | Like clore. |
| Encourir, | *to incur.* | Like courir. |
| Endormir, | *to lull asleep.* | Like dormir. |
| Endormir (se), | *to fall asleep.* | Like dormir. |
| Enduire, | *to do over with.* | Like conduire. |
| Enfuir (se), | *to run away.* | Like fuir. |
| Enjoindre, | *to enjoin.* | Like craindre. |
| Enquérir (se), | *to inquire.* | Like acquérir. |
| Equivaloir, | *to be equivalent.* | Like valoir. |
| Ensuivre (se), | *to ensue.* | Like suivre. Used only in the third person singular and plural of every tense. |
| Entremettre, | *to intermeddle.* | Like mettre. |
| Entreprendre, | *to undertake.* | Like prendre. |
| Entretenir, | *to entertain.* | Like tenir. |
| Entrevoir, | *to have a glimpse.* | Like voir. |
| Envoyer, | *to send.* | It is only irregular in the Future, which is *enverrai ;* and in the Conditional, *enverrais.* |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Eteindre, | *to extinguish.* | Like craindre. |
| Exclure, | *to exclude.* | Like conclure. |
| Extraire, | *to extract.* | Like traire. |

## F.

Faillir, *to fail.* Now used only in the Ind. Pret. *faillis*, etc.; Sub. Imp. *que je faillisse ;* and the Part. Past, *failli.*

### FAIRE, *to make.*

*Participles :* Faisant, fait, te.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je fais, fais, fait ; | Nous faisons, faites, font. |
| Imp. | Je fais-ais, ais, ait ; | Nous fais-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je fis, fis, fit ; | Nous f-îmes, îtes, irent. |
| Fut. | Je fe-rai, ras, ra ; | Nous fe-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je fe-rais, rais, rait ; | Nous fe-rions, riez, raient |
| S. P. & Imp. | Je fasse, fasses, fasse ; Je fisse, fisses, fît ; | Nous fass-ions, iez, ent. Nous fiss-ions, iez, ent. |
| Imper. | Fais, qu'il fasse ; | Faisons, faites, qu'ils fassent. |

Falloir, *to be necessary.* (See Impers. Verbs.)
Feindre, *to feign.* Like craindre.
Fleurir, *to blossom*, is regular ; but when it signifies *to flourish*, it makes the Part. Pres. *florissant ;* and the Ind. Imp. *florissait, florissaient.*
Forfaire, *to trespass, to forfeit.* Like faire.
Frire, *to fry.* Defective. Part. Pres. (wanting) ; Past, *frit ;* Ind. Pres. *fris, fris, frit*, etc.; Fut. *frirai ;* Cond. *frirais.* The other tenses are wanting ; but the deficiency is supplied by *Faire* prefixed to the infinitive *Frire ;* as, *faisant frire ; je faisais frire*, etc.

### FUIR, *to flee.*

*Participles :* Fuyant, fui, ie.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je fuis, fuis, fuit ; | Nous fu-yons, yez, ient. |
| Imp. | Je fuy-ais, ais, ait ; | Nous fuy-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je fuis, fuis, fuit ; | Nous fu-îmes, îtes, irent. |

This preterite is seldom used; instead of *je fuis*, and *je m'enfuis*, you say, *je pris la fuite*, from *prendre la fuite*, to run away; and *j'évitai*, from *éviter*, to avoid, to shun.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Fut. | Je fui-rai, ras, ra; | Nous fui-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je fui-rais, rais, rait; | Nous fui-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. | Je fui-e, es, fuie; | Nous fuy-ions, iez, fuient. |
| Imp. | Je fui-sse, sses, fût; | Nous fui-ssions, ssiez, ssent. |

The present subjunctive is very little used, and the imperfect still less; instead of them, you say, *que je prenne la fuite, que je prisse la fuite; que j'évite, que j'évitasse.*

| | |
|---|---|
| Imper. Fuis, qu'il fuie; | Fuy-ons, ez, qu'ils fuient. |

## G.

Gésir, *to lie.* Defective. Only used in the participle; *gisant, gît:* in *nous gisons, ils gisent; il gisait;* and in monumental inscriptions; *Ci-gît*, here lies.

## H.

Haïr, *to hate.* The irregularity of this verb is, that it drops the two points over the ï, in the three persons singular of the Ind. Pres., and in the second person singular of the imperative. *Je hais, tu hais, il hait;* pronounced, *Je hès, tu hès, il hèt.*

## I.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Induire, | *to indure.* | Like conduire. |
| Inscrire, | *to inscribe.* | Like écrire. |
| Instruire, | *to instruct.* | Like conduire. |
| Interdire, | *to interdict.* | Like dire; except that it makes *interdiez*, and not *interdites.* |
| Interrompre, | *to interrupt.* | Like rompre. |
| Intervenir, | *to intervene.* | Like tenir. |
| Introduire, | *to introduce.* | Like conduire. |

## J.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Joindre, | *to join.* | Like craindre. |

## L.

### LIRE, *to read.*

*Participles:* Lisant, lu, ue.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je lis, lis, lit; | Nous li-sons, sez, sent. |
| Imp. | Je lis-ais, ais, ait; | Nous lis-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je lus, lus, lut; | Nous l-ûmes, ûtes, urent. |
| Fut. | Je li-rai, ras, ra; | Nous li-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je li-rais, rais, rait; | Nous li-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. | Je li-se, ses, se; | Nous li-sions, siez, sent. |
| Imp. que | Je lusse, lusses, lût; | Nous lu-ssions, ssiez, ssent. |
| Imper. | Lis, qu'il lise; | Li-sons, sez, qu'ils lisent. |

Luire, *to shine.* Defective. Makes Past Part. *lui;* and has neither Ind. Pret. nor Sub. Imp. in use. The rest like conduire.

## M.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Maintenir, | *to maintain.* | Like tenir. |
| Malfaire, | *to do mischief.* | Like faire. |
| Maudire, | *to curse.* | Like dire; except that it makes the Part. Pres. *maudissant;* and the second person plural of the Ind. Pres., and of the Imperative, *maudissez.* |
| Méconnaître, | *to be unthankful.* | Like connaître. |
| Médire, | *to slander.* | Like dire. |
| Méfaire, | *to misdo.* | Like faire. |

### MENTIR.

*Participles:* Mentant, menti.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je mens, mens, ment; | Nous ment-ons, ez, ent. |
| Imp. | Je ment-ais, ais, ait; | Nous ment-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je ment-is, is, it; | Nous ment-îmes, îtes, irent. |
| Fut. | Je menti-rai, ras, ra; | Nous menti-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je menti-rais, rais, rait; | Nous menti-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. | Je mente, mentes, mente; | Nous ment-ions, iez, mentent. |
| Imp. que | Je ment-isse, isses, ît; | Nous mentiss-ions, iez, ent. |
| Imper. | Mens, qu'il mente; | Ment-ons, ez, qu'ils mentent. |

Méprendre (se), *to mistake.* Like prendre.

## METTRE, *to put.*

*Participles:* Mettant, mis, se.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je mets, mets, met; | Nous met-tons, tez, tent. |
| Imp. | Je mett-ais, ais, ait; | Nous mett-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je mis, mis, mit; | Nous mîmes, mîtes, mirent. |
| Fut. | Je mett-rai, ras, ra; | Nous mett-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je mett-rais, rais, rait; | Nous mett-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. | Je met-te, tes, te; | Nous met-tions, tiez, tent. |
| Imp. que | Je misse, misses, mît; | Nous missions, missiez, missent. |
| Imper. | Mets, qu'il mette; | Met-tons, tez, qu'ils mettent. |

## MOUDRE, *to grind.*

*Participles:* Moulant, moulu, ue.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je mouds, mouds, moud; | Nous mou-lons, lez, lent. |
| Imp. | Je moul-ais, ais, ait; | Nous moul-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je mou-lus, lus, lut; | Nous mou-lûmes, lûtes, lurent. |
| Fut. | Je moud-rai, ras, ra; | Nous moud-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je moud-rais, rais, rait; | Nous moud rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. | Je mou-le, les, le; | Nous mou-lions, liez, lent. |
| Imp. que | Je mou-lusse, lusses, lût; | Nous moulu-ssions, ssiez, ssent. |
| Imper. | Mouds, qu'il moule; | Mou-lons, lez, qu'ils moulent. |

## MOURIR, *to die.*

*Participles:* Mourant, mort, te.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je meurs, meurs, meurt; | Nous mour-ons, ez, meurent. |
| Imp. | Je mour-ais, ais, ait; | Nous mour ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je mour-us, us, ut; | Nous mour-ûmes, ûtes, urent. |
| Fut. | Je mour-rai, ras, ra; | Nous mour rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je mour-rais, rais, rait; | Nous mour-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. | Je meur-e, es, e; | Nous mour-ions, iez, meurent. |
| Imp. que | Je mou-russe, russes, rût; | Nous mouru-ssions, ssiez, ssent. |
| Imper. | Meurs, qu'il meure; | Mour-ons, ez, qu'ils meurent. |

The compound tenses are formed with the verb *être.*

## MOUVOIR, *to move.*

*Participles:* Mouvant, mû, ue.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je meus, meus, meut; | Nous mouv-ons, ez, meuvent. |
| Imp. | Je mouv-ais, ais, ait; | Nous mouv-ions, iez, aient. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pret. | Je mus, mus, mut ; | Nous mûmes, mûtes, murent. |
| Fut. | Je mouv-rai, ras, ra ; | Nous mouv-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je mouv-rais, rais, rait ; | Nous mouv-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. que | Je meu-ve, ves, ve ; | Nous mouv-ions, iez, meuvent. |
| Imp. que | Je musse, musses, mût ; | Nous muss-ions, iez, ent. |
| Imper. | Meus, qu'il meuve ; | Mouv-ons, ez, qu'ils meuvent. |

## N.

### NAÎTRE, *to be born.*

*Participles :* Naissant, né, née.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je nais, nais, nait ; | Nous naiss-ons, ez, ent. |
| Imp. | Je naiss ais, ais, ait ; | Nous naiss-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je na-quis, quis, quit ; | Nous na-quîmes, quîtes, quirent. |
| Fut. | Je naît-rai, ras, ra ; | Nous naît-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je naît-rais, rais, rait ; | Nous naît-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. que | Je naiss-e, es, e ; | Nous naiss-ions, iez, ent. |
| Imp. que | Je na-quisse, quisses, quît ; | Nous na-quissions, quissiez, quissent. |
| Imper. | Nais, qu'il naisse ; | Naiss-ons, ez, qu'ils naissent. |

Nuire, *to injure.* Like conduire ; except in making the Past Part. *nui.*

## O.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Obtenir, | *to obtain.* | Like tenir. |
| Offrir, | *to offer.* | Like ouvrir. |
| Oindre, | *to anoint.* | Like craindre. |
| Omettre, | *to omit.* | Like mettre. |

### OUVRIR, *to open.*

*Participles :* Ouvrant, ouvert, te.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | J'ouvr-e, es, e ; | Nous ouvr-ons, ez, ent. |
| Imp. | J'ouvr-ais, ais, ait ; | Nous ouvr-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | J'ouvr-is, is, it ; | Nous ouvr-îmes, îtes, irent. |
| Fut. | J'ouvri-rai, ras, ra ; | Nous ouvri-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | J'ouvri-rais, rais, rait ; | Nous ouvri-rions, riez, raient. |
| S P. que | J'ouvr e, es, e ; | Nous ouvr-ions, iez, ent. |
| Imp. que | J'ouvr-isse, isses, ît ; | Nous ouvriss-ions, iez, ent. |
| Imper. | Ouvre, qu'il ouvre ; | Ouvr-ons, ez, qu'ils ouvrent. |

Ouïr, *to hear.* Defective. Seldom used, except in the Part. Past, with some other verb ; as, *je l'ai ouï dire,* I have heard it said.

## P.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Paître, | *to graze.* | Defective. Conjugated like *Naître*, but wanting the Preterite, and the Past Part. |
| Paraître, | *to appear.* | Like connaître. |
| Parcourir, | *to run over.* | Like courir. |
| Parfaire, | *to perfect.* | Like faire. |
| Partir, | *to depart.* | Like mentir. |
| Parvenir, | *to attain.* | Like tenir. |
| Peindre, | *to paint.* | Like craindre. |
| Permettre, | *to permit.* | Like mettre. |
| Plaindre (se), | *to complain.* | Like craindre. |

### PLAIRE, *to please.*

*Participles:* Plaisant, plu.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je plais, plais, plait; | Nous plais-ons, ez, ent. |
| Imp. | Je plais-ais, ais, ait; | Nous plais-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je plus, plus, plut; | Nous pl-ûmes, ûtes, urent. |
| Fut. | Je plai-rai, ras, ra; | Nous plai-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je plai-rais, rais, rait; | Nous plai-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. | Je plaise, plaises, plaise; | Nous plais-ions, iez, ent. |
| Imp. Subj. | Je plusse, plusses, plût; | Nous pluss-ions, iez, ent. |
| Imper. | Plais, qu'il plaise; | Plais-ons, ez, qu'ils plaisent. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Plouvoir, | *to rain.* | (See Impers. Verb.) |
| Poursuivre, | *to pursue.* | Like suivre. |
| Pourvoir, | *to provide.* | Like voir. Except in the Pret. *pourvus*, etc.; the Fut. *pourvoirai*, etc.; the Cond. *pourvoirais*, etc; and the Imp. Subj. *pourvusse*, etc. |

### POUVOIR, *to be able.*

*Participles:* Pouvant, pu.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je puis *or* peux, peux, peut; | Nous pouv-ons, ez, peuvent. |
| Imp. | Je pouv-ais, ais, ait; | Nous pouv-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je pus, pus, put; | Nous p-ûmes, ûtes, urent. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Fut. | Je pour-rai, ras, ra ; | Nous pour-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je pour-rais, rais, rait ; | Nous pour-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. | Je pui-sse, sses, sse ; | Nous pui-ssions, ssiez, ssent. |
| Imp. | Je pusse, pusses, pût ; | Nous pu-ssions, ssiez, ssent. |
| Imper. | (Wanting.) | |

Prédire, *to predict.* Like dire ; except that it makes *prédisez.*

## PRENDRE, *to take.*

*Participles:* Prenant, pris.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je prends, prends, prend ; | Nous pre-nons, nez, nnent. |
| Imp. | Je pren-ais, ais, ait ; | Nous pren-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je pris, pris, prit ; | Nous pr-îmes, îtes, irent. |
| Fut. | Je prend-rai, ras, ra ; | Nous prend-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je prend-rais, rais, rait ; | Nous prend-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. | Je pre-nne, nnes, nne ; | Nous pre-nions, niez, nnent. |
| Imp. | Je prisse, prisses, prît ; | Nous pri-ssions, ssiez, ssent. |
| Imper. | Prends, qu'il prenne; | Pre-nons, nez, qu'ils prennent. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Prescrire, | *to prescribe.* | Like écrire. |
| Pressentir, | *to foresee.* | Like mentir. |
| Prévaloir, | *to prevail.* | Like valoir ; except in the Sub. Pres., *prévale, es, e ; prévalions,* etc. |
| Prévenir, | *to anticipate.* | Like tenir. |
| Prévoir, | *to foresee.* | Like voir ; except in the Fut., *prévoirai,* etc. ; and the Cond., *prévoirais,* etc. |
| Produire, | *to produce.* | Like conduire. |
| Promettre, | *to promise.* | Like mettre. |
| Promouvoir, | *to promote.* | Like mouvoir. |
| Prescrire, | *to proscribe.* | Like écrire. |
| Provenir, | *to proceed from.* | Like tenir. |

## Q.

Quérir, *to fetch.* Used only in the Infinitive with the verbs *Aller, Envoyer, Venir ;* as, *allez quérir,* go and bring ; *envoyer quérir,* send for, etc.

## R.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Rabattre, | *to diminish.* | Like battre. |
| Rasseoir, | *to sit down again.* | Like asseoir. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Ravoir, | *to have again.* | Used in the infinitive only. |
| Ravoir (se), | *to recover.* | |
| Rebattre, | *to beat again.* | Like battre. |
| Reboire, | *to drink again.* | Like boire. |
| Rebouillir, | *to boil again.* | Like bouillir. |
| Reconnaître, | *to be grateful.* | Like connaître. |
| Recoudre, | *to sew again.* | Like coudre. |
| Recourir, | *to have recourse.* | Like courir. |
| Recouvrir, | *to cover again.* | Like couvrir. |
| Recueillir, | *to collect.* | Like cueillir. |
| Recuire, | *to cook again.* | Like conduire. |
| Recroître, | *to grow again.* | Like croître. |
| Redéfaire, | *to undo again.* | Like faire. |
| Reduire, | *to reduce.* | Like conduire. |
| Refaire, | *to do again.* | Like faire. |
| Relire, | *to read again.* | Like lire. |
| Reluire, | *to glitter.* | Like luire. |
| Remettre, | *to replace.* | Like mettre. |
| Remoudre, | *to grind again* (grain, | &c.) Like moudre. |
| Rémoudre, | *to grind again* (knives, | &c.) Like moudre. |
| Renaître, | *to be born again.* | Like naître. |
| Rentraire, | *to darn.* | Like traire. |
| Renvoyer, | *to send away.* | Like envoyer. |
| Repaître, | *to feed,* | Like naître, except the Pret. *repus*, and Past Part. *repu.* |
| Repartir, | *to set out again.* | Like partir. |
| Repentir, | *to repent.* | Like mentir. |
| Reprendre, | *to take again.* | Like prendre. |
| Requérir, | *to require.* | Like acquérir. |

## RÉSOUDRE, *to resolve.*

*Participles:* Résolvant, résolu (résous).

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je ré-sous, sous, sout; | Nous résol-vons, vez, vent. |
| Imp. | Je résolv-ais, ais, ait; | Nous résolv-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je réso-lus, lus, lut; | Nous réso-lûmes, lûtes, urent. |
| Fut. | Je résoud-rai, ras, ra; | Nous résoud-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je résoud-rais, rais, rait; | Nous résoud-rions, riez, raient. |
| S P. que | Je résol-ve, ves, ve; | Nous résol-vions, viez, vent. |
| Imp. que | Je réso-lusse, lusses, lût; | Nous résolu-ssions, ssiez, ssent. |
| Imper. | Résous, qu'il résolve; | Résol-vons, vez, qu'ils resolvent. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Ressentir, | *to resent.* | Like mentir. |
| Restreindre, | *to restrain.* | Like craindre. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Retenir,** | *to retain.* | Like tenir. |
| **Retraire,** | *to milk again.* | Like traire. |
| **Revaloir,** | *to return like for like.* | Like valoir. |
| **Revenir,** | *to come back.* | Like tenir |

## REVÊTIR, *to invest.*

*Participles:* Revêtant, revêtu, ue.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je rev-êts, êts, êt; | Nous revêt-ons, ez, ent. |
| Imp. | Je revêt-ais, ais, ait; | Nous revêt-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je revêt is, is, it; | Nous revêt-îmes, îtes, irent. |
| Fut. | Je revêti-rai, ras, ra; | Nous revêti-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je revêti-rais, rais, rait; | Nous revêti-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. que | Je revêt-e, es, e; | Nous revêt-ions, iez, ent. |
| Imp. que | Je revêt-isse, isses, ît; | Nous revêti-ssions, ssiez, ssent. |
| Imper. | Revêts, qu'il revête; | Revêt-ons, ez, qu'ils revêtent. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Revivre,** | *to receive,* | Like vivre. |
| **Revoir,** | *to see again.* | Like voir. |

## RIRE, *to laugh.*

*Participles:* Riant, ri.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je ris, ris, rit; | Nous ri-ons, ez, ent. |
| Imp. | Je ri-ais, ais, ait; | Nous ri-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je ris, ris, rit; | Nous r-îmes, îtes, irent. |
| Fut. | Je ri-rai, ras, ra; | Nous ri-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je ri-rais, rais, rait; | Nous ri-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. que | Je ri-e, es, e; | Nous ri-ions, iez, ent. |
| Imp. que | Je risse, risses, rît; | Nous ri-ssions, ssiez, ssent. |
| Imper. | Ris, qu'il rie; | Ri-ons, ez, qu'ils rient. |

## ROMPRE *to conclude.*

*Participles:* Rompant, rompu, ue.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je romps, romps, rompt; | Nous romp-ons, ez, ent. |
| Imp. | Je romp-ais, ais, ait; | Nous romp-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je romp-is, is it; | Nous romp-îmes, îtes, irent. |
| Fut. | Je romp-rai, ras, ra; | Nous romp-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je romp-rais, rais, rait; | Nous romp-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. que | Je romp-e, es, e; | Nous romp-ions, iez, ent. |
| Imp. que | Je romp-isse, isses, ît; | Nous romp-issions, issiez, issent. |
| Imper. | Romps, qu'il rompe; | Romp-ons, ez, qu'ils rompent. |

## S.

Saillir, *to project.* Defective. It has only these forms; *Saillant, sailli ; il saille ; il saillait ; il saillera ; il saillerait ; qu'il saille ; qu'il saillît.* Saillir, *to gush out*, is regular.

Satisfaire, *to satisfy.* Like faire.

### Savoir, *to know.*

*Participles :* Sachant, su, ue.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je sais, sais, sait ; | Nous sa-vons, vez, vent. |
| Imp. | Je sav-ais, ais, ait ; | Nous sav-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je sus, sus, sut ; | Nous s-ûmes, ûtes, urent. |
| Fut. | Je sau-rai, ras, ra ; | Nous sau-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je sau-rais, rais, rait ; | Nous sau-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. que | Je sach-e, es, e ; | Nous sach-ions, iez, ent. |
| Imp. que | Je susse, susses, sût ; | Nous su-ssions, ssiez, ssent. |
| Imper. | Sache, qu'il sache ; | Sach-ons, ez, qu'ils sachent. |

Secourir, *to succour.* Like courir.

Séduire, *to seduce.* Like conduire.

Sentir, *to feel.* Like mentir.

Seoir, *to be becoming.* It has only the Part. Pres. *séyant ;* and the third person of the simple tenses : *Il sied, ils siéent ; il seyait ; il siéra ; il siérait.*

### Servir, *to serve.*

*Participles :* Servant, servi, ie.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je sers, sers, sert ; | Nous serv-ons, ez, ent. |
| Imp. | Je serv-ais, ais, ait ; | Nous serv-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je serv-is, is, it ; | Nous serv-îmes, îtes, irent. |
| Fut. | Je servi-rai, ras, ra ; | Nous servi-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je servi-rais, rais, rait ; | Nous servi-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. que | Je serve, serves, serve ; | Nous serv-ions, iez, ent. |
| Imp. que | Je serv-isse, isses, ît ; | Nous serviss-ions, iez, ent. |
| Imper. | Sers, qu'il serve ; | Serv-ons, ez, qu'ils servent. |

Servir (se), *to make use of.* Like servir.

Sortir, *to go out.* Like mentir

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Soudre, | *to solve.* | Used in the infinitive only. |
| Souffrir, | *to suffer.* | Like ouvrir. |
| Soumettre, | *to submit.* | Like mettre. |
| Sourire, | *to smile.* | Like rire. |
| Souscrire, | *to subscribe.* | Like écrire. |
| Soustraire, | *to subtract.* | Like traire. |
| Soutenir, | *to sustain.* | Like tenir. |
| Souvenir (se), | *to remember.* | Like tenir. |
| Subvenir, | *to relieve.* | Like tenir. |
| Suffire, | *to suffice.* | Like confire; except that its Part. Past is *suffi.* |

## SUIVRE, *to follow.*

*Participles:* Suivant, suivi, ie.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je suis, suis, suit; | Nous sui-vons, vez, vent. |
| Imp. | Je suiv-ais, ais, ait; | Nous suiv-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je sui-vis, vis, vit; | Nous sui-vîmes, vîtes, virent. |
| Fut. | Je suiv-rai, ras, ra; | Nous suiv-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je suiv-rais, rais, rait; | Nous suiv-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. | Je sui-ve, ves, ve; | Nous sui-vions, viez, vent. |
| Imp. | Je sui-visse, visses, vît; | Nous suivi-ssions, ssiez, ssent. |
| Imper. | Suis, qu'il suive; | Sui-vons, vez, qu'ils suivent |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Surfaire, | *to ask too much.* | Like faire. |
| Surprendre, | *to surprise.* | Like prendre. |
| Surseoir, | *to supersede.* | A law term; like voir, except that it makes in the Fut. *je surseoirai,* etc.; Cond. *je surseoirais,* etc.; and the Part. Past, *sursis.* |
| Survenir, | *to happen.* | Like tenir. |
| Survivre, | *to survive.* | Like vivre. |

## T.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Taire (se), | *to be silent.* | Like plaire. |
| Teindre, | *to tinge.* | Like craindre. |

## TENIR, *to hold.*

*Participles:* Tenant, tenu, ue.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je tiens, tiens, tient; | Nous ten-ons, ez, tiennent. |
| Imp. | Je ten-ais, ais, ait; | Nous ten-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je tins, tins, tint; | Nous tinmes, tîntes, tinrent. |
| Fut. | Je tiend-rai, ras, ra; | Nous tiend-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je tiend-rais, rais, rait; | Nous tiend-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. | que Je tienn-e, es, e; | Nous ten-ions, iez, tiennent. |
| Imp. | que Je tinss-e, es, tînt; | Nous tinss-ions, iez, ent. |
| Imper. | Tiens, qu'il tienne; | Ten-ons, ez, qu'ils tiennent. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Tisser, | *to weave.* | Defective. | Part. Past, *tissu.* |
| Traduire, | *to translate.* | | Like conduire. |

## TRAIRE, *to milk.*

*Participles:* Trayant, trait, te.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je trais, trais, trait; | Nous tray-ons, ez, traient. |
| Imp. | Je tray-ais, ais, ait, | Nous tray-ions, iez, aient. |
| Fut. | Je trai-rai, ras, ra; | Nous trai-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je trai-rais, rais, rait; | Nous trai-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. | que Je trai-e, es, e; | Nous tray-ions, iez, traient. |
| Imper. | Trais, qu'il traie; | Tray-ons, ez, qu'ils traient. |

Traire has no Preterite nor Sub. Imp. in use.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Transcrire, | *to transcribe.* | Like écrire. |
| Transmettre, | *to transmit.* | Like mettre. |

## TRESSAILLIR, *to start.*

*Participles:* Tressaillant, tressailli, ie.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je tressaill-e, es, e; | Nous tressaill-ons, ez, ent. |
| Imp. | Je tressaill-ais, ais, ait; | Nous tressaill-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je tressaill-is, is, it; | Nous tressaill-îmes, îtes, irent. |
| Fut. | Je tressailli-rai, ras ra; | Nous tressailli-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je tressailli-rais, rais, rait; | Nous tressailli-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. | que Je tressaill-e, es, e; | Nous tressaill-ions, iez, ent. |
| Imp. | que Je tressaill-isse, isses, ît; | Nous tressailli-ssions, ssiez, ssent. |

No Imperative.

## V.

**Vaincre,** *to conquer.* **Like convaincre.**

### VALOIR, *to be worth.*

*Participles:* Valant, valu, ue.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je vaux, vaux, vaut; | Nous va-lons, lez, lent. |
| Imp. | Je val-ais, ais, ait; | Nous val-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je va-lus, lus, lut; | Nous va-lûmes, lûtes, lurent. |
| Fut. | Je vaud-rai, ras, ra; | Nous vaud-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je vaud-rais, rais, rait; | Nous vaud rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. | que Je vail-e, es, e; | Nous va-lions, liez, vaillent. |
| Imp. | que Je va-lusse, lusses, lût; | Nous va lussions, lussiez, lussent. |
| Imper. | Vaux, qu'il vaille; | Va-lons, lez, qu'ils vaillent. |

**Venir,** *to come.* **Like tenir.**
**Vêtir,** *to clothe.* **Like revêtir.**

### VIVRE, *to live.*

*Participles:* Vivant, vécu.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je vis, vis, vit; | Nous vi-vons, vez, vent. |
| Imp. | Je viv-ais, ais, ait; | Nous viv-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je vé-cus, cus, cut; | Nous vé-cûmes, cûtes, curent. |
| Fut. | Je viv-rai, ras, ra; | Nous viv-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je viv-rais, rais, rait; | Nous viv-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. | que Je vi-ve, ves, ve; | Nous vi-vions, viez, vent. |
| Imp. | que Je vé-cusse, cusses, cût; | Nous vé-cussions, cussiez, cussent. |
| Imper. | Vis, qu'il vive; | Vi-vons, vez, qu'ils vivent. |

### VOIR, *to see.*

*Participles:* Voyant, vu, ue.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je vois, vois, voit; | Nous voy-ons, ez, voient. |
| Imp. | Je voy-ais, ais, ait; | Nous voy-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je vis, vis, vit; | Nous v-îmes, îtes, irent. |
| Fut. | Je ver-rai, ras, ra; | Nous ver-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je ver-rais, rais, rait; | Nous ver-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. | que Je voi-e, es, e; | Nous vo-yions, yiez, ient. |
| Imp. | que Je visse, visses, vît; | Nous vissions, vissiez, vissent. |
| Imper. | Vois, qu'il voie; | Voy-ons, ez, qu'ils voient. |

VOULOIR, *to wish.*

*Participles:* Voulant, voulu, ue.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Je veux, veux, veux; | Nous vou-lons, lez, veulent. |
| Imp. | Je voul-ais, ais, ait; | Nous voul-ions, iez, aient. |
| Pret. | Je vou-lus, lus, lut; | Nous vou-lûmes, lûtes, lurent. |
| Fut. | Je voud-rai, ras, ra; | Nous voud-rons, rez, ront. |
| Cond. | Je voud-rais, rais, rait, | Nous voud-rions, riez, raient. |
| S. P. | Je veuill-e, es, e; | Nous vou-lions, liez, veuillent. |
| Imp. | Je vou-lusse, lusses, lût; | Nous vou-lussions, lussiez, lussent. |
| Imper. | Veuille, qu'il veuille; | Veuill-ons, ez, qu'ils veuillent. |

---

AGREEMENT OF THE VERB WITH ITS NOMINATIVE OR SUBJECT.

The *nominative* or *subject* of the verb is the person or thing, which is or does what is expressed by the verb. The nominative is found by placing before the verb the question, *qui est-ce qui?* who is it that? The answer to this question indicates the nominative. When I say, *l'enfant est sage*, the child is prudent, *qui est-ce qui est sage?* who is it that is prudent? Answer, *l'enfant*, the child; and this is the nominative of the verb *est*.

RULE. Every verb should be of the same number and person with its nominative or subject.

EXAMPLES. *Je parle*, I speak; *parle* is of the first person singular, because *je*, its nominative, is the first person singular. *Vous parlez tous deux*, you speak both of you; *parlez* is of the second person plural, because *vous*, its nominative, is of the second person plural.

*First Remark.* When a verb has two subjects in the singular number, the verb is put in the plural; as, *Mon frère et ma sœur lisent*, my brother and sister read.

*Second Remark.* When the two subjects are of different persons, the verb is put in the worthiest person; the first person is worthier than the second, and the second than the third; as, *Vous et moi, nous lisons*, you and I, *we* read.

*Vous et votre frère, vous lisez,* you and your brother, *you* read.

### GOVERNMENT OF ACTIVE VERBS.

Active Verbs are those, after which we can place *quelqu'un*, or *quelque chose*, somebody or something. *Aimer*, is an active verb, because you can say, *aimer quelqu'un*, or love somebody. For example, *j'aime mon frère*, I love my brother ; the word *frère*, which follows the active verb, is called the *regimen* of the verb. The regimen is known by asking the question *qu'est-ce que ?* what is it that ? — Example. *Qu'est-ce que j'aime ?* what is it that I love ? Answer, *mon frère ; frère* is the regimen of the verb *j'aime.*

Rule. The regimen of any verb is generally placed after that verb, unless it be a pronoun.

Example. *Le chat mange la souris* ; the cat eats the mouse. Here *souris* is the regimen of the verb *mange.*

But when the regimen is a pronoun, it is put before the verb. Examples ;

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Je vous aime, | *for* | j'aime vous ; | *I love you.* |
| Il m'aime, | " | il aime moi ; | *He loves me.* |

*Remark.* Besides this first regimen, called *direct*, some active verbs take a second, called *indirect.* This second regimen is designated by the prepositions *à* and *de*, to and of ; as, *donnez une poupée à l'enfant*, give a doll to the child ; *écrire une lettre à son ami*, to write a letter to his friend ; *à l'enfant* is the regimen indirect of *donnez*, and *à son ami*, the regimen indirect of *écrire. Accuser quelqu'un de mensonge ; de mensonge* is the regimen indirect of *accuser*, etc.

Every active verb has its *passive ;* this passive is formed by making the regimen *direct* of the active verb the nominative of the passive, and placing the preposition *par* or *de* after the verb. Thus, to put the following phrase into the passive ; *Le chat mange la souris*, say *La souris est mangée par le chat*, the mouse is eaten by the cat. *J'aime mon père tendrement*, I love my father tenderly ; *mon*

*père est aimé tendrement de moi*, my father is tenderly loved of me.

### CONJUGATION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

There is but one conjugation for the Passive Verbs; it is made by the verb *être*, to be, in all its tenses, followed by the past participle of the verb to be conjugated; which must agree in gender and number with the subject.

### ÊTRE AIMÉ, *to be loved.*

#### INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLES.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Present,** | Être aimé | *or* aimée, | *to be loved.* |
| **Preterite,** | Avoir été aimé | *or* aimée, | *to have been loved.* |
| **Part. Pres.** | Etant aimé | *or* aimée, | *being loved.* |
| **Part. Past,** | Ayant été aimé | *or* aimée, | *having been loved.* |

#### INDICATIVE.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Present,** | Je suis aimé | *or* aimée, | *I am loved.* |
| **Imperfect,** | J'étais aimé | *or* aimée, | *I was loved.* |
| **Pret. Def.** | Je fus aimé | *or* aimée, | *I was loved.* |
| **Pret. Indef.** | J'ai été aimé | *or* aimée, | *I have been loved.* |
| **Pret. Ant.** | J'eus été aimé | *or* aimée, | *I had been loved.* |
| **Pluperfect,** | J'avais été aimé | *or* aimée, | *I had been loved.* |
| **Fut. Abs.** | Je serai aimé | *or* aimée, | *I shall be loved.* |
| **Fut. Ant.** | J'aurai été aimé | *or* aimée, | *I shall have been loved.* |

#### CONDITIONAL.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Present,** | Je serais aimé | *or* aimée, | *I should be loved.* |
| **Past,** | J'aurais été aimé | *or* aimée, | *I should have been loved.* |

#### IMPERATIVE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Sois aimé** | *or* aimée | *be thou loved.* |
| **Qu'il soit aimé,** | | *let him be loved.* |
| **Qu'elle soit aimée,** | | *let her be loved.* |

SUBJUNCTIVE.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Que je sois aimé | *or* aimée, | *that I may be loved.* |
| Imp. | Que je fusse aimé | *or* aimée, | *that I might be loved.* |
| Pret. | Que j'aie été aimé | *or* aimée, | *that I may have been loved.* |
| Plup. | Que j'eusse été aimé | *or* aimée, | *that I might have been loved.* |

In the same manner are conjugated *être fini*, to be finished ; *être reçu*, to be received, etc.

GOVERNMENT OF PASSIVE VERBS.

RULE. The preposition *de* or *par* is put before the noun or pronoun which follows the passive verb ; as, *La souris est mangée par le chat*, the mouse is eaten by the cat ; *L'enfant sage est aimé de ses parens*, the prudent child is loved by its parents.

*Remark.* Never use the preposition *par*, by, with the name of God ; say, *Les méchants seront punis de Dieu*, the wicked will be punished of God ; and not *seront punis par Dieu*, will be punished by God.

CONJUGATION OF NEUTER VERBS.

Those verbs are called *Neuter*, after which you cannot place *quelqu'un* or *quelque chose*, somebody or something ; *languir*, to languish, and *dormir*, to sleep, are neuter verbs, because you cannot say *languir quelqu'un*, *dormir quelque chose*, etc. They are called *neuter*, because they are neither active nor passive.

The greater part of the neuter verbs are conjugated, like the active, with the auxiliary *avoir* ; *je dors*, *j'ai dormi*, *j'avais dormi*, etc.

But there are other neuter verbs, which are conjugated in their compound tenses, with the auxiliary *être* ; as, *venir*, to come ; *tomber*, to fall, etc.

## CONJUGATION OF NEUTER VERBS.

### INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLES.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Present, | Tomber, | | *to fall.* |
| Preterit. | Etre tombé | *or* tombée, | *to be fallen* |
| Present, | Tombant, | | *falling.* |
| Past, | Tombé | *or* tombée, | *fallen.* |
| | Étant tombé | *or* tombée, | *being fallen.* |

### INDICATIVE.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Present, | Je tombe, | | *I fall.* |
| Imperf. | Je tombais, | | *I fell.* |
| Pret. Def. | Je tombai, | | *I fell.* |
| Pret. Indef. | Je suis tombé | *or* tombée, | *I am fallen.* |
| Pret. Ant. | Je fus tombé | *or* tombée, | *I was fallen.* |
| Pluperfect, | J'étais tombé | *or* tombée, | *I was fallen.* |
| Future Abs. | Je tomberai, | | *I shall fall.* |
| Future Ant. | Je serai tombé | *or* tombée, | *I shall be fallen.* |

### CONDITIONAL.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Present, | Je tomberais, | | *I should fall.* |
| Past, | Je serais tombé | *or* tombée, | *I should have fallen* |

### IMPERATIVE.

| | |
|---|---|
| Tombe, | *fall (thou).* |
| Qu'il *or* qu'elle tombe, | *let him* or *her fall.* |

### SUBJUNCTIVE.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Present, | Que je tombe, | | *that I may fall.* |
| Imperf. | Que je tombasse, | | *that I might fall.* |
| Preterit. | Que je sois tombé | *or* tombée, | *that I may be fallen.* |
| Pluperfect, | Que je fusse tombé | *or* tombée, | *that I might be fallen* |

In the same manner are conjugated *aller*, *arriver*, *entrer*, *sortir*, etc.[1]

### GOVERNMENT OF NEUTER VERBS.

Some neuter verbs have a regimen.

RULE. The preposition *à* or *de* is put before the noun or pronoun, which follows the neuter verb.

### EXAMPLES.

A.

| | |
|---|---|
| Nuire *à* la santé, | *to be injurious to health.* |
| Plaire *au* Seigneur, | *to be pleasing to the Lord.* |
| Convenir *à* quelqu'un, | *to be agreeable to some one.* |

DE.

| | |
|---|---|
| Médire *de* quelqu'un, | *to speak evil of some one.* |
| Profiter *des* leçons, | *to profit by the lesson.* |
| Jouir *de* la liberté, | *to enjoy liberty.* |

### REFLECTED VERBS.

*Reflected Verbs* are those whose subject and regimen are of the same person ; as,

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Je me flatte, | *I flatter myself.* | Nous nous flattons. |
| Tu te loues, | *Thou praisest thyself.* | Vous vous louez. |
| Il se blesse, | *He wounds himself.* | Ils se blessent. |

The Reflected Verbs are conjugated with auxiliary *être*, in the compound tenses ; as,

Je me *suis* flatté *or* flattée. Nous nous *sommes* flattés *or* flattées.

---

[1] There are about six hundred neuter verbs in the French language, *fifty* of which are conjugated with *être*, and consequently their passive participles agree in gender and number with their subjects.

Tu t'es loué *or* louée. Vous vous êtes loués *or* louées.
Il *or* elle s'est blessé *or* blessée. Ils *or* elles se sont blessés *or* blessées.

### CONJUGATION OF THE REFLECTED VERB SE REPENTIR.

### INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLES.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Present, | Se repentir, | | *to repent.* |
| Preterit. | S'être repenti | *or* repentie, | *to have repented.* |
| Part. Pres. | Se repentant, | | *repenting.* |
| Part. Past, | S'étant repenti | or repentie, | *having repented.* |

### INDICATIVE.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Present, | Je *me* repens, | | *I repent.* |
| Imperf. | Je *me* repentais, | | *I repented.* |
| Pret. Def. | Je *me* repentis, | | *I repented.* |
| Pret. Indef. | Je *me* suis repenti | *or* repentie, | *I have repented.* |
| Pret. Ant. | Je *me* fus repenti | *or* repentie, | *I had repented.* |
| Pluperf. | Je m'étais repenti | *or* repentie, | *I had repented.* |
| Future Abs. | Je *me* repentirai, | | *I will repent.* |
| Future Ant. | Je *me* serai repenti | *or* repentie, | *I shall have, etc.* |

### CONDITIONAL.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Present, | Je *me* repentirais, | | *I should repent.* |
| Past, | Je *me* serais repenti | *or* repentie, | *I should have, etc.* |

### IMPERATIVE.

| | |
|---|---|
| Repens-*toi*, | *repent (thou).* |
| Qu'il *or* qu'elle *se* repente, | *let him* or *her repent.* |
| Repentons-*nous*, | *let us repent.* |
| Repentez-*vous*, | *repent (ye).* |
| Qu'ils *or* qu'elles *se* repentent, | *let them, etc.* |

### SUBJUNCTIVE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Present, | Que je *me* repente, | *that I may repent.* |
| Imperf. | Que je *me* repentisse, | *that I might repent.* |
| Preterit. | Que je *me* sois repenti *or* repentie, | *that I may have, etc.* |
| Pluperfect, | Que je *me* fusse repenti *or* repentie, | *that I might have, etc.* |

*Remark.* *Me, te, se, nous, vous,* which are the regimen of the reflected verbs, are sometimes the *regimen direct;* as, *je me flatte,* that is, *je flatte moi,* I flatter myself; *tu te blesseras,* that is, *tu blesseras toi,* thou wilt wound thyself. At other times, these pronouns are the *regimen indirect,* as in these examples; *Je me fais une loi,* that is, *je fais à moi une loi,* I make myself a law. *Il s'est fait honneur, il a fait honneur à soi,* he has done himself honor.

### IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Those verbs are called *Impersonal,* which are used in the third person singular only; as,

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Il pleut, | *it rains.* | Il éclaire, | *it lightens.* |
| Il neige, | *it snows.* | Il gèle, | *it freezes.* |
| Il grêle, | *it hails.* | Il dégèle, | *it thaws.* |
| Il tonne, | *it thunders.* | Il faut, | *it is necessary.* |
| Il bruine, | *it drizzles.* | Il y a, etc. | *there is* or *are, etc.* |

### CONJUGATION OF THE IMPERSONAL VERB FALLOIR.

FALLOIR, IL FAUT: *it must, it is necessary.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Infinitive, | Falloir, | *to be necessary.* |
| Participle, | Ayant fallu, | *having been, etc.* |

### INDICATIVE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Present, | Il faut, | *it is necessary.* |
| Imperf. | Il fallait, | *it was, etc.* |
| Pret. Def. | Il fallut, | *it was, etc.* |
| Pret. Indef. | Il a fallu, | *it has been, etc,* |
| Pret. Ant. | Il eut fallu, | *it had been, etc.* |
| Pluperf. | Il avait fallu, | *it had been, etc.* |
| Future Abs. | Il faudra, | *it will be, etc.* |
| Future Ant. | Il aura fallu, | *it will have been, etc.* |

### CONDITIONAL

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Present, | Il faudrait, | *it would be necessary.* |
| Past, | Il aurait fallu, | *it would have been, etc.* |

### SUBJUNCTIVE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Present, | Qu'il faille, | *that it may be necessary.* |
| Imperf. | Qu'il fallût, | *that it might be, etc.* |
| Preterite, | Qu'il ait fallu, | *that it may have been, etc.* |
| Pluperf. | Qu'il eût fallu, | *that it might have been, etc.* |

*Remark.* The word *il* denotes an impersonal verb in those cases only, in which its place cannot be supplied by a noun; for, when in speaking of a child, we say *il joue*, it plays, it is not impersonal, because in the place of *il*, you may put *l'enfant*, the child, and say, *l'enfant joue.*[1]

---

[1] The impersonal verb, IL Y A, answers exactly to our *there is, there are.* It is conjugated like *avoir*, and takes either a singular or plural noun after it; as,

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Il y a | du pain, | *there is bread;* |
| Il y avait | du monde, | *there were many people;* |
| Il y aura | des orages, | *there will be storms;* |
| Il y aurait eu | du danger, | *there would have been danger;* |

and so through all the tenses of the indicative, conditional, and subjunctive of the verb *avoir*. The negative is *il n'y a pas;* the interrogative, *y a-t-il?* It is used in the third person singular only.

The impersonals, IL EST and C'EST. The sense will generally indicate when the one of these impersonals is to be used, and when the other. The following rules, however, may be of service.

1. C'EST must be used when the impersonal can be rendered in English by *this* or *that;* as,

| | |
|---|---|
| Qu'est-ce que c'est? | *What is that?* |
| C'est une rose; | *That is a rose.* |

2. C'EST must be used when the verb is followed by a *noun*, forming the antecedent part of a sentence, and connected to what follows by *que de;* as,

*C'est* un malheur *que d'*être malade; *It is a misfortune to be sick.*

3. But if the verb is followed *by an adjective without a noun*, forming the antecedent part of a sentence, and connected with what follows by *de* only, then IL EST must be used; as,

*Il est* facheux *d'*être malade; *It is vexatious to be sick.*

## CHAPTER VI.

### THE PARTICIPLE.

The *Participle* is a word which *participates* qualities, both of the verb and the adjective ; as, *aimant*, *aimé* : possessing the quality of the verb, so far as to have its signification and regimen ; *aimant Dieu*, *aimé de Dieu* : and the quality of the adjective so far as to qualify a person or

---

4. In asking the hour of the day, and in answering the question, IL EST must be used ; as,

| | |
|---|---|
| Quelle heure *est-il ?* | *What o'clock is it ?* |
| *Il est* dix heures ; | *It is ten o'clock.* |

But if you ask what hour is striking, you must say C'EST ; as,

| | |
|---|---|
| Quelle heure *est-ce* qui sonne ? | *C'est* une heure. |
| *What hour is that which strikes ?* | *It is one o'clock.* |

This however comes under Rule 1, since you can render the Impersonal into English by *that*.

5. C'EST must be used before all personal pronouns, both singular and plural.

*C'est* moi, *It is I.* *C'est* nous, *it is we.* *C'est* eux, *it is they.*

6. C'EST must also be used in speaking of the days of the week, and of holidays ; as,

| | |
|---|---|
| *C'est* aujourd'hui Dimanche ; | *It is Sunday to-day.* |
| *C'est* demain Lundi ; | *To-morrow is Monday.* |
| *C'est* Mardi fête ; | *Tuesday is a holiday.* |

7. If a case should still occur wherein you are in doubt which of these impersonals to use, you can always employ C'EST, by introducing the word *chose*, *que*, into the sentence ; as,

| | |
|---|---|
| *Il est* bon *de* faire, *de* dire, etc. | *It is good to do, etc.* |
| *C'est* une bonne *chose, que de*, etc. | *It is a good thing, etc.* |

The verb *To be*, when used to denote the state of the weather, must be rendered in French by the third *person* singular of the verb *Faire ;* as,

*Il fait*, il *faisait*, il a *fait*, etc. beau tems.
It *is*, it *was*, it *has been*, etc. fine weather.

thing, that is, to mark its quality ; as, *vieillard honoré*, honored old man ; *vertu éprouvée*, tried virtue.

Participles are of two kinds ; the *Present* and the *Past*.

### AGREEMENT OF THE PARTICIPLES.

1. The present participle always ends in *ant* ; as, *aimant*, *finissant*, *recevant*, *rendant* : loving, finishing, etc.

Rule. The present participle never varies, that is, it takes neither gender nor number ; as, *un homme lisant*, a man reading ; *une femme lisant*, a woman reading. *Des hommes lisant*, men reading ; *des femmes lisant*, women reading.

*Remark.* The *gerund* is nothing more than the present participle, with the particle *en* before it ; thus, *Les jeunes gens se forment l'esprit en lisant de bons livres*, the young form their minds in reading good books.[1]

2. The past participle *aimé*, *fini*, *reçu*, *rendu*. The past participle agrees with its nominative or with its regimen.

### AGREEMENT OF THE PAST PARTICIPLE WITH ITS NOMINATIVE.

First Rule. The past participle, when accompanied by the verb *être*, agrees in gender and number with its nominative or subject ; that is, you add an *e* to it when the subject is feminine, and an *s* to the masculine and feminine singular to form the plural.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|---|---|
| Mon frère est tombé ; | *my brother has fallen.* |
| Ma sœur est tombée ; | *my sister has fallen.* |

[1] Care must be taken not to confound the present participle with the *verbal* adjectives [adjectives derived from verbs]. You say, *un homme obligeant*, an obliging man ; *une femme obligeante*, an obliging woman : but these are not participles, because they have no regimen ; but when you say, *cette femme est d'un bon caractère obligeant tout le monde quand elle peut*, this woman is of good character, obliging everybody when she can ; *obligeant* is here a participle, because it has for its regimen *tout le monde*, everybody. — *Grammaire de L'Homond.*

| | |
|---|---|
| Mes frères sont tombés ; | *my brothers have fallen.* |
| Mes sœurs sont tombées ; | *my sisters have fallen.* |
| Mon frère a été puni ; | *my brother has been punished.* |
| Ma sœur a été punie ; [1] | *my sister has, etc.* |
| Mes frères ont été punis ; | *my brothers have, etc.* |
| Mes sœurs ont été punies ; | *my sisters have, etc.* |
| Mon frère s'est blessé ; | *my brother has wounded himself.* |
| Ma sœur s'est blessée ; | *my sister has, etc.* |
| Mes frères se sont blessés ; | *my brothers have, etc.* |
| Mes sœurs se sont blessées ; | *my sisters have, etc.* |

***Exception.*** In the compound tenses of reflected verbs, the participle does not agree with its nominative, when followed by a regimen direct ; as,

***Elle s'est mis cela dans la tête***, she has taken that idea into her head (and not *mise*) ; ***Ils se sont donné la mort***, they put themselves to death (and not *ils se sont donnés*) ; for here *cela* and *la mort* are the *regimens direct* of *mis* and *donné*.

Second Rule. When the past participle is accompanied by the verb *avoir*, it does not agree with its nominative.

EXAMPLES.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Mon père a | *écrit* une lettre ; | *My father has written a letter.* |
| Ma mère a | *écrit* une lettre ; | *My mother has, etc.* |
| Mes frères ont | *écrit* une lettre ; | *My brothers have, etc.* |
| Mes sœurs ont | *écrit* une lettre ; | *My sisters have, etc.* |

AGREEMENT OF THE PAST PARTICIPLE WITH ITS REGIMEN.

First Rule. The past participle agrees with its regimen direct, when the regimen comes before the participle.

---

[1] The participle *été*, been, has neither feminine nor plural ; you say, *elle a été*, *ils ont été*, she has been, they have been. — *Grammaire de L'Homond.*

EXAMPLES.

La lettre que vous avez *écrite*, je l'ai *lue*.
*The letter that you have written, I have read it.*
Les livres que j'avais *prêtés*, on les a *rendus*.
*The books I had lent, they have returned them.*
Quelle affaire avez-vous *entreprise ?*
*What business have you undertaken ?*

The regimen generally put before the participles is one of the pronouns, *que, me, te, se, le, la, les, nous, vous.*

SECOND RULE. When the regimen is placed after the participle, the participle does not agree with it.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|---|---|
| J'ai *écrit* une lettre ; | *I have written a letter.* |
| J'ai *écrit* des lettres ; | *I have written some letters.* |
| Vous avez *acheté* un livre ; | *You have bought a book.* |
| Vous avez *acheté* des livres ; | *You have bought some books.* |

*Ecrit, acheté*, do not vary, because in both instances the regimen comes after the participle.

*Remark.* You say, however,

Les vertus que j'ai *entendu* louer.
*The virtues that I have heard praised.*
Les vices que j'ai *résolu* d'éviter.
*The vices that I have resolved to avoid.*

But in these examples *que* is not the regimen of the participles, *entendu, résolu*, but of the infinitives which follow, *louer, éviter*. In order to know whether the regimen belongs to the participle, you should see if you can put this regimen directly after the participle. You cannot say, *J'ai entendu les vertus*, I have heard the virtues ; *j'ai resolu les vices*, I have resolved the vices.

## CHAPTER VII.

### THE PREPOSITION.

The *Preposition* is a word which serves to connect one noun to another or to a pronoun which comes after it. For example, when I say *le fruit de l'arbre*, the fruit of the tree, *de* shows the relation between *fruit* and *arbre* ; when I say, *utile à l'homme*, useful to man, *à* shows the relation between *l'homme* and *utile* ; when I say, *j'ai reçu de mon père*, etc., I have received of my father, etc., *de* serves to join the noun *père* to the verb *ai reçu*, etc ; *de* and *à* are prepositions. The word which follows is called the regimen of the preposition.

These words are called *prepositions ;* because they are placed immediately *before* the noun they govern.

---

## CHAPTER VIII.

### THE ADVERB.

The *Adverb* is a word generally joined to a verb or an adjective to render the signification more definite. When you say, *cet enfant parle distinctement*, this child speaks distinctly ; the word *distinctement* renders the signification of the word *parler*, to speak, more definite.

*Remark.* Certain adjectives are sometimes used as adverbs. Thus you say, *chanter juste*, to sing in tune ; *chanter faux*, to sing out of tune ; *parler bas*, to speak low ; *voir clair*, to see clear ; *frapper fort*, to strike hard ; *sentir bon*, to smell good, etc.

## CHAPTER IX.

### THE CONJUNCTION.

We have hitherto seen how words are joined together so as to convey an idea. Words thus united form a *phrase* or *proposition ;* the shortest phrase must have at least two words in it, the nominative and the verb ; as, *je chante*, I sing ; *vous lisez*, you read ; *l'homme meurt*, man dies ; and sometimes the verb takes a regimen ; as, *je chante un air*, I sing an air ; *vous lisez une lettre*, you read a letter, etc. We are now to see how *phrases* are joined together.

The *Conjunction* is a word which serves to join one phrase to another ; for example, when I say, *il pleure et il rit en même temps*, he weeps and laughs at the same time ; the word *et* joins the first phrase, *il pleure*, to the second, *il rit*.

### GOVERNMENT OF CONJUNCTIONS.

Some conjunctions are followed by the Subjunctive mode, others by the Indicative.

Those followed by the subjunctive are ;

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Soit que | encore que | si ce n'est que |
| sans que | à moins que | jusqu'à ce que |
| quoi que | pourvu que | de peur que |
| avant que | supposé que | de crainte que |
| afin que | en cas que | non pas que ; |

and in general all which denote doubt or desire ; as, *je souhaite que cet enfant soit savant*, I desire that this child may be learned ; *je doute que cet enfant soit jamais savant*, I doubt whether this child be ever learned.

## CHAPTER X.

### INTERJECTION.

Interjections are words which serve to express the emotions of the soul ; as joy and grief.

| | |
|---|---|
| Joy ; | *Ah ! Bon !* |
| Grief ; | *Aie ! Ah ! Hélas ! Ouf !* |
| Fear ; | *Ha ! Hé !* |
| Aversion ; | *Fi ! Fi ! donc !* |
| Admiration ; | *Oh !* |
| Encouragement ; | *Çà ! Allons ! Courage !* |
| Calling ; | *Holà ! Hé !* |
| Silence ; | *Chut ! Paix !* |

---

## PARTICULAR REMARKS

### UPON THE DIFFERENT KINDS OF WORDS.

### THE LETTERS.

*H* is aspirated in *héros*, a hero ; you say, *le héros :* but it is not aspirated in *héroisme ;* you say, *l'héroïsme de la vertu*, the heroism of virtue.

*L*, in the middle and at the end of words, when preceded by an *i*, is generally liquid ; as, at the end of the words *soleil*, sun ; *orgueil*, pride.

*Œil*, eye, is pronounced as if written *euil*.

*S*, between two vowels, is pronounced like *z*. Examples ;

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Maison, | *a house ;* | pronounced maizon. |
| Poison, | *poison ;* | " poizon. |
| Rase, | *shorn ;* | " raze. |
| Braise, | *live coal ;* | " braize. |

There are a few exceptions to this rule ; as, *préséance*, precedence ; *présupposer*, and the like compound words, which preserve the original sound of the initial *s*.

*D*, at the end of the word *grand*, is pronounced like *t* before a vowel and an *h* mute ; thus, *un grand homme* is pronounced as if written *un grant-homme*.

*Gn*, in the middle of words, is liquid ; as, *ignorance, magnanime, agneau*, etc.

*T* is not pronounced at the end of the words *respect, aspect*, even when the next word begins with a vowel or an *h* mute.[1]

### COMPOUND NOUNS.

When a noun is composed of an adjective and a noun, both of the component words take an *s* in the plural. Ex. ; *un arc-boutant*, a buttress, makes, in the plural, *des arcs-boutans ; un chat-huant*, a screech-owl, *des chats-huants*, etc.

When a noun is composed of two nouns united by a preposition, only the first of them takes an *s* in the plural. Ex. ; *un chef-d'œuvre*, a master-piece, makes *des chefs-d'œuvre ; un arc-en-ciel*, a rainbow, makes *des arcs-en-ciel*, etc.

When a noun is composed of a noun joined to a preposition or a verb, the noun only takes an *s* in the plural. Ex. ; *un entre-sol*, makes *des entre-sols ; un garde-fou*, a parapet, makes *des garde-fous*, etc.

---

[1] This notice of some of the peculiarities of the French pronunciation might have been extended with advantage to the learner. I take the liberty of adding a few more words, that have something peculiar in their pronunciation.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Aspic, | *an asp ;* | pronounced | aspick. |
| Exact, | *exact ;* | " | exakt. |
| Hymen, | *hymen ;* | " | emen. |
| Faon, | *a fawn ;* | " | fan. (*French.*) |
| Paon, | *a peacock ;* | " | pan. (*French.*) |
| Stagnant, | *stagnant ;* | " | stag-nant. |
| Tact, | *tact ;* | " | takt. |

The word *Œdipe*, Œdipus, is pronounced *é-dipe*, and not O-é-dipe. " I believe, Sir," said a gentleman to Voltaire, " that O-é-dipe will be played at the theatre this evening." " O-u-i ! " replied he, ironically.

The word *Août*, August, is pronounced *Oû ;* and *la Mi-août*, the middle of August, *la mi-ou*. " When I hear people," says M. de Bellièvre, " saying around me, *mi-a-ou, mi-a-ou*, I think I hear so many cats mewing."

### NOUNS OF NUMBER.

*Cent* in the plural, and *vingt*, in *quatre-vingt*, *six-vingt*, take an *s* when followed by a noun. Ex. ; *Deux cents hommes*, two hundred men ; *quatre-vingts volumes*, eighty volumes ; *six-vingts arbres*, six score of trees.

For the date in years, you write *mil*. Ex. ; *Le froid fut très grand en mil sept cent neuf*, the cold was very great in one thousand seven hundred and nine ; in all other situations you write *mille*, which never takes *s* in the plural; *deux mille hommes*, two thousand men.

*Neuf*, before a vowel, is pronounced like *neuv*. Examples ; *il y a neuf ans*, nine years ago, pronounced *neuvans*.

You say *une demi-heure*, half an hour ; *une demi-livre*, half a pound : this word *demi* suffers no change before a noun. But you must say, *une heure et demie*, and hour and a half ; *une livre et demie*, a pound and a half : when the word *demi* comes after a noun, it follows its gender.

### PARTITIVE NOUNS.

*Partitive nouns* are those which designate a part of a class or species ; as, *la plupart de*, the greater part of ; *une infinité de*, an infinity of ; *beaucoup de*, a great many ; *peu de*, few, etc.

*Partitive nouns*, followed by a plural noun, require the verb and adjective in the plural. Ex. ; *La plupart des enfants sont légers*, most children are light-hearted ; *peu d'enfants sont attentifs*, few children are attentive.

*Remark.* Before nouns preceded by an adjective and taken in a partitive sense, you must place *de*, and not *des*. Examples ; *J'ai lu de bons livres*, I have read some good books ; *J'ai vu de belles maisons*, I have seen some fine houses : and not *des* bons livres, and *des* belles maisons [1]

---

[1] But when a noun, used in a partitive sense, is not preceded by an adjective, you must place before it *du* for the masculine singular, and *de la* for the feminine singular, and *des* for the plural of both genders. Examples ;

| | |
|---|---|
| Donnez-moi *du* pain ; | *Give me some bread.* |
| Apportez-moi *de la* bière ; | *Bring me some beer.* |
| Avez vous *des* plumes ? | *Have you any quills ?* |
| J'ai *des* livres ; | *I have some books.* |

PRONOUNS.

1. *Vous*, you, used for *tu*, thou, requires a plural verb, but the adjective following in the singular. Example ; *Mon fils, vous serez estimé, si vous êtes sage*, my son, you will be esteemed, if you are discreet.

2. *Le, la, les*, are sometimes pronouns and sometimes articles ; the article is always followed by a noun, *le frère, les sœurs, les hommes ;* whilst, on the contrary, the pronoun is always joined to a verb ; as, *je le connais*, I knew him ; *je la respecte*, I respect her ; *je les estime*, I esteem them.

The pronoun *le* takes neither gender nor number when it stands in the place of an adjective or of a verb.

For example, if you should say to a lady, *Madame, êtes vous malade* ? madam, are you sick ? her answer should be, *oui, je le suis*, yes, I am ; and not *je la suis*, because *le* stands in the place of the adjective *malade*. *On doit s'accommoder à l'humeur des autres, autant qu'on le peut*, we should accommodate ourselves as much as possible to the humor of others ; you say *qu'on le peut*, and not *qu'on la peut*, because *le* refers to the verb *accommoder*, and not to the noun *humeur*.

3. The pronoun *soi* is used only after a nominative vague and indeterminate in its signification ; as, *on*, one ; *chacun*, every one ; *ce*, it, etc.

EXAMPLES.

*On* ne doit jamais parler de *soi*.
*One ought never to speak of one's self.*
*Chacun* songe à *soi*.
*Every one thinks of himself.*
N'aimer que *soi* c'est être mauvais citoyen.
*To love one's self only, is to be a bad citizen.*

4. The possessive pronouns *son, sa, ses, leur, leurs*, denoting the name of a *thing*, are not used, except when the name of that thing is expressed in the same sentence. Thus you cannot say, *Paris est beau ; j'admire ses bâtiments*, Paris is beautiful ; I admire its buildings ; but you must say, *j'en admire les bâtiments*, I admire the buildings of it.

But *son, sa, ses*, etc., are used for the name of a thing,

when that thing is expressed in the same sentence ; as you would say, *la Seine a sa source en Bourgogne*, the Seine has its source in Burgundy.[1]

5. You must say, *C'est en Dieu que nous devons mettre notre espérance*, it is in God we should put our hope ; and not *en qui nous devons*, etc. *C'est à vous même que je veux parler*, it is to you I wish to speak ; and not *à qui je veux*, etc. In these two examples *que* is a conjunction, not a relative pronoun.

6. The relative pronoun *qui* is always of the same person and number as its *antecedent ;* thus, you must say,

| | |
|---|---|
| moi *qui* ai vu ; | *I who have seen.* |
| toi *qui* as vu ; | *thou who hast seen.* |
| lui *qui* a vu ; | *he who has seen.* |
| nous *qui* avons vu ; | *we who have seen.* |
| vous *qui* avez vu ; | *you who have seen.* |
| eux *qui* ont vu ; | *they who have seen.* |

7. *Qui*, preceded by a preposition, is applied to persons only, and never to things. Thus, do not say, *les sciences à qui je m'applique*, the sciences to which I apply myself ; but *auxquelles je m'applique*. But you may say, *la personne à qui je me confie*, or *à la quelle je me confie ;* the person in whom I confide.

9. *Ce*, before the verb *être*, requires that this verb should be in the singular, except when followed by the third person plural ; in which case, the verb is generally put in the plural, though not always.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| C'est *moi*, qui, etc., | *it is I who*, etc. | ce sont *eux*. |
| C'est *toi*, " " | *it is thou*, etc. | ce sont *elles*. |
| C'est *lui*, " " | *it is he*, etc. | ce sont *vos ancêtres*, qui ont bâti |
| C'est *nous*, " " | *it is we*, etc. | cette maison. |
| C'est *vous*, " " | *it is you*, etc. | |

9. *Tout*, put for *quoique*, however, although ; or for *entièrement*, entirely ; does not change its number before

[1] Notwithstanding the name of the thing be not expressed in the same sentence, you can make use of the pronouns *son*, *sa*, *ses*, when they are governed by a preposition ; as, *Paris est beau ; j'admire la grandeur de ses bâtiments :* Paris is beautiful ; I admire the grandeur of its buildings.

an adjective masculine. Thus you say ; ***Les enfans, tout aimables qu'ils sont, ne laissent pas d'avoir bien des défauts,*** children, however amiable they may be, still have many faults ; and not *tous aimables.*

*Tout* does not change either its gender or number before an adjective feminine plural, beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute ; thus you say, ***Ces images, tout amusantes qu'elles sont, ne me plaisent pas,*** those images, although they are very amusing, do not please me ; and not *toutes amusantes.*

But if the adjective feminine is singular, or if, being plural, it commences with a consonant, then you use *toute, toutes.*[1] Thus you say ;

| | |
|---|---|
| Cette image, *toute* amusante qu'elle est, etc. | *this image, although very amusing, etc.* |
| Ces images, *toutes* belles qu'elles sont, etc. | *these images, although very beautiful, etc.* |

10. *Quelque* — *que* are used in this manner ; if there is an *adjective* between them, *quelque* takes no *s* at the end. Ex. : *Les Rois, quelque puissans qu'ils soyent, ne doivent pas, etc.*, kings, however powerful they may be, ought not, etc.

But if there is a *noun* between *quelque* and *que, quelque* is of the same number with the noun. Ex. : *Quelques richesses que vous ayez, vous ne devez pas, etc.*, whatever riches you may have, you ought not, etc.

If the noun is placed after *que* and the verb, instead of *quelque*, you must write, in two separate words, *quel que*, or *quelle que ; quels* or *quelles que.*

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Quel que* soit votre pouvoir ; | *Whatever may be your power.* |
| *Quels que* soyent vos moyens ; | *Whatever may be your resources.* |
| *Quelle que* soit votre force ; | *Whatever may be your force.* |
| *Quelles que* soient vos richesses ; | *Whatever may be your riches.* |

---

[1] When *tout* signifies *entièrement*, entirely, it follows the same rule. Thus,

| | |
|---|---|
| Ils sont *tout* interdits ; | *they were entirely confounded.* |
| Elles sont *tout* interdites ; | *they were, etc.* |
| Elle était *toute* enchantée ; | *she was entirely enchanted.* |
| Elles étaient *toutes belles ;* | *they were entirely beautiful.* |

11. *Celui-ci*, this, and *celui-là*, that, are used in this manner : *celui-ci*, for the person last spoken of ; *celui-là*, for the person first spoken of.

| | |
|---|---|
| Les deux philosophes Héraclite et Démocrite étaient d'un caractère bien différent ; *celui-ci* riait toujours ; *celui-là* pleurait sans cesse. | *The two philosophers, Heraclitus and Democritus, were of very different characters ; this — laughed always ; that — wept continually.* |

*Ceci* denotes a thing nearer to us than another ; *cela*, one farther from us ; as, *je n'aime pas ceci* ; *donnez moi cela* ; I do not like this ; give me that.

12. The word *personne*, used as a pronoun in the signification of *nobody*, is masculine. You must say, then, *Je ne connais personne plus heureux que lui*, I know nobody happier than he. But *personne*, used as a noun, is *feminine* ; *Cette personne est bien heureuse*, this person is very happy.

*Un chacun, un quelqu'un*, are no longer in use.

## THE VERB.

I. The nominative, whether noun or pronoun, is placed after the verb in the following cases.

1. When a question is asked.

| | |
|---|---|
| Que penseront de vous *les honnêtes gens*, si vous n'êtes pas sage ? | *What will honest people think of you, if you are not discreet ?* |
| Irai-je ? viendras-tu ? est-il arrivé ? | *Shall I go ? wilt thou come ? is he arrived ?* |

2. When you relate what another said.

| | |
|---|---|
| Je me croirai heureux, disait *un bon roi*, quand je ferai le bonheur de mes sujets. | *I shall account myself happy, said a good king, when I make my people happy.* |

3. After *tel* and *ainsi*.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Tel* était son avis ; | *Such was his opinion.* |
| *Ainsi* mourut cet homme ; | *Thus died this man.* |

4. After impersonal verbs.

Il *est* arrivé un grand malheur; *A great misfortune has happened.*

II. The *Preterite Definite* should be used only in speaking of a time completely passed, and none of which remains. Hence you must not say, *j'étudiai aujourd'hui, cette semaine, cette année,* because the day, the week, the year, are not yet passed. Nor can you say, *j'étudiai ce matin ;* because the *preterite definite* requires an interval of at least one day. But you can say, *j'étudiai hier, la semaine dernière, l'année passée,* etc.

III. In what tense of the Subjunctive must we put the verb which follows the conjunction *que,* when it is subjunctive ?

First Rule. When the first verb is in the *present* or the *future,* the verb which follows *que,* must be in the subjunctive present.

EXAMPLES.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Il faut<br>Il faudra | que vous *soyez* plus attentif. | *It is necessary*<br>*It will be, etc.* | *that you be more attentive.* |

Second Rule. When the first verb is in either of the past tenses, put the second verb in the imperfect of the subjunctive.

EXAMPLES.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Il fallait<br>Il fallut<br>Il a fallu<br>Il eût fallu<br>Il aurait fallu | que vous *fussiez* plus attentif. | *It was necessary*<br>*It was, etc.*<br>*It has been, etc.*<br>*It had been, etc.*<br>*It would have been, etc.* | *that you should be more attentive.* |

PREPOSITIONS.

1. Do not confound *autour,* round about, with *alentour,* round about ; *autour* is a preposition, and is always followed by a regimen ; *autour d'un trône,* round about a throne ; whereas *alentour* is an adverb, and has no regimen ; *il était*

*sur son trône et ses fils alentour*, he was upon his throne, and his sons round about.

2. Do not confound *avant*, before, with *auparavant*, before; *avant* is a preposition, and is always followed by a regimen; *avant l'âge, avant le temps*, before the age, before the time; whereas *auparavant* is only an adverb, and has no regimen; *ne partez pas si tôt; venez me voir auparavant:* do not depart so soon; come and see me before you go.

3. *Au travers*, through or across, is followed by the preposition *de; au travers des ennemis*, through enemies; *à travers* is not followed by it; *à travers les ennemis*, through the enemy.

### ADVERBS.

1. *Plus* and *davantage* cannot always be used indiscriminately; *davantage* cannot be followed by the preposition *de*, nor by the conjunction *que*; you cannot say, *il a davantage de brillant, que de solide*, he has more brilliancy than solidity, but *plus de brillant*; you cannot say, *il se fie davantage à ses lumières qu'à celles des autres*, he trusts more to his own intelligence than that of others, but *il se fie plus*, etc.

*Davantage* can be used only as an adverb; as, *la science est estimable, mais la vertu l'est bien davantage*, science is estimable, but virtue is much more so.

2. Do not confound the adverb *près de*, which means, *on the point of*, with the adjective *prêt à*, disposed to; you must not say, *il est prêt à tomber*, he is ready to fall, but *il est près de tomber*.

3. Do not confound *à la campagne*, with *en campagne*. this last is used only in reference to troops; *l'armée est en campagne*, the army is in campaign: but you would say, *j'ai passé l'été à la campagne*, I have passed the summer in the country.

### REGIMEN.

Rule. A noun may be followed by two adjectives or two verbs at the same time, provided these adjectives or these verbs do not require each a different regimen.

EXAMPES.

| | |
|---|---|
| Cet homme est utile et cher à sa famille ; | *This man is useful and dear to his family.* |
| Cet officier attaqua et prit la ville ; | *This officer attacked and took the city.* |

But you cannot say, *cet homme est utile et chéri de sa famille*, because the adjective *utile* cannot govern *de sa famille* ; nor can you say, *cet officier attaqua et se rendit maître de la ville*, because the verb *attaqua* cannot govern *de la ville*.

---

## CHAPTER XI.

### ORTHOGRAPHY.

Orthography is the manner of writing correctly all the words of a language.

### ORTHOGRAPHY OF NOUNS.

1. The first letter of all proper names and titles should be a capital ; *Pierre*, *Paris*, etc.

2. All nouns which do not end with an *s* take one in the plural ; *un jardin charmant*, a charming garden ; *des jardins charmants*, charming gardens. (For exceptions, see Chapter I. on the formation of the plural.)

3. Although the word *honneur*, honor, is written with *nn*, there is but one in *honorer*, to honor.

4. You write with *mp*, the words *compte*, *compter*, account, to count ; with *m* only, the words *comte*, *comté*, a count, a county ; and with *n* the words *conte*, *conter*, a story, to relate.

5. You write with *mp* the word *champ*, a field ; and with *nt*, the word *chant*, singing.

6. You write thus *faim*, hunger ; and *fin*, the end. *A la fin j'eus faim*, at the conclusion, I was hungry.

### ORTHOGRAPHY OF VERBS.

INDICATIVE PRESENT. *Singular.* 1. If the first person ends in *e*, add an *s* for the second; the third is like the first; j'aim*e*, tu aim*es*, il aim*e*, etc.

2. If the first person ends in *s*, the second is like the first; the third generally ends in *t*; je fini*s*, tu fini*s*, il fini*t*. In some verbs, the third person ends in *d*; il ren*d*, il ven*d*, il preten*d*.

*Plural.* The plural of all the conjugations always ends in *ons*, *ez*, *ent*; nous aim*ons*, vous aim*ez*, ils aim*ent*: nous finiss*ons*, vous finiss*ez*, ils finiss*ent*, etc.

INDICATIVE IMPERFECT. It always ends in this manner[1]; *ais*, *ais*, *ait*: *ions*, *iez*, *aient*. J'aim*ais*, tu aim*ais*, il aim*ait*, nous aim*ions*, vous aim*iez*, ils aim*aient*.

INDICATIVE PRETERITE. The *Preterite Definite* has four terminations; *ai*, *is*, *us*, *ins*:

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. J'aim*ai*, tu aim*as*, il aim*a*; | *I loved, etc.* |
| 2. Je fini*s*, tu fini*s*, il fini*t*; | *I finished, etc.* |
| 2. Je re*çus*, tu re*çus*, il re*çut*; | *I received, etc.* |
| 4. Je dev*ins*, dev*ins*, dev*int*; | *I became, etc.* |

INDICATIVE FUTURE. It always ends thus; *rai*, *ras*, *ra*: *rons*, *rez*, *ront*. J'aimer*ai*, etc. Je recev*rai*, tu recev*ras*, etc.[2]

CONDITIONAL PRESENT. It always ends thus; *rais*, *rais*, *rait*: *rions*, *riez*, *raient*. J'aimer*ais*, etc.[3]

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT. It always ends thus; *e*, *es*, *e*: *ions*, *iez*, *ent*. Que j'aim*e*, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE IMPERFECT. It has four terminations, *asse*, *isse*, *usse*, *insse*, as follows;

---

[1] The Imperfect was formerly written *ois*, *ois*, *oit*, *oient*; which orthography has not yet entirely fallen into disuse; though *ais*, etc. is generally adopted.

[2] Be careful not to write je receverai, je renderai, etc.; you cannot put *e* before *rai*, except in the first conjugation.

[3] The same remark may be made in regard to the orthography of the Conditional as of the Imperfect.

1. Que j'aim*asse*, que tu aim*asses*, qu'il aim*ât*.
2. Que je fin*isse* que tu fin*isses*, qu'il fin*ît*.
3. Que je re*çusse*, que tu re*çusses*, qu'il re*çût*.
4. Que je dev*insse*, que tu dev*insses*, qu'il dev*înt*.

***Remark.*** Observe that the second person plural of the verbs generally ends in *z*.

### ORTHOGRAPHY OF PRONOUNS, ADVERBS, AND OTHER WORDS.

*Leur* never takes an *s* at the end when joined to a verb ; it then signifies *à eux*, *à elles*, to them ; *ces enfants ont été sages, je leur donnerai un prix :* these children have behaved well, I will give them a prize.

*Leur*, followed by a plural noun, takes an *s ;* it then signifies *d'eux*, *d'elles*, of them, their ; *un père aime ses enfants, mais il n'aime pas leurs défauts :* a father loves his children, but he does not love their faults.

You must not place an accent over *o* in *notre*, *votre*, when they are followed by a noun, *votre père*, *notre maison*, your father, our house ; but you must put a circumflex accent over *ô* in *le vôtre*, *le nôtre*, *la vôtre*, *la nôtre*, yours, ours. Ex. ; *mon livre est plus beau que le vôtre*, my book is finer than yours.

The grave accent is put over *là*, there (adverb of place) ; *allez-là*, go there ; but none is put over *la*, the article, *la mère ;* nor over *la*, her, the feminine pronoun, *je la connais*, I know her.

The grave accent is placed over *où*, where (adverb of place); *où allez-vous ?* where are you going ? but no accent is placed over *ou*, or (conjunction) ; *c'est vous ou moi*, it is you or I.

The grave accent is placed over *à*, to (preposition) ; *je vais à Paris*, I am going to Paris : but no accent is placed over *a*, has (third person singular of *avoir*) *; il a de l'esprit*, he has talent.

The circumflex accent is placed over *dû*, due (past participle of the verb *devoir*) *; rendre à chacun ce qui lui est dû*, give to each one what is due to him : but no accent is placed over *du*, of the (article) ; *la lumière du soliel*, the light of the sun.

### THE APOSTROPHE.

The *apostrophe* ( ' ) marks the elision of one of the vowels *a*, *e*, *i*.

*A*, *e*, followed by a vowel or an *h* mute, are cut off in *le*, *la*, *je*, *me*, *te*, *se*, *de*, *ne*, *que*, *ce*.

*Le* ; l'ami, l'enfant, l'instinct, *for* le ami, etc.
l'oiseau, l'univers, l'honneur, " le oiseau, etc.
*La* ; l'abeille, l'épée, l'intention, etc. " la abeille, etc.
*Je* ; j'apprends, j'étudie, j'honore, etc. " je apprends, etc.
*Me* ; vous m'aimez, vous m'estimez, etc. " vous me aimez, etc.
*Te* ; je t'avertis, je t'ennuis, etc. " je te avertis, etc.
*Se* ; il s'amuse, il s'ennuit, etc. " il se amuse, etc.
*De* ; beaucoup d'apparence, d'ignorance, etc. *for* de apparance, etc.
*Ne* ; je n'aime pas, je n'estime pas, etc. *for* ne aime pas, etc.
*Que* ; qu'avez-vous fait ? qu'importe, etc. *for* que avez-vous, etc.
*Ce* ; c'est la vérité, etc. " ce est, etc.

*E*, at the end of the words *quelque*, *entre*, *jusque*.

*Quelque* loses *e* before *un*, *autre* ; as, quelqu'*un*, quelqu'*autre*.

*Entre* loses *e* before *eux*, *elles*, *autres* ; as, entr'*eux*, entr'*elles*, entr'*autres*.

*Jusque* loses *e* before *à*, *au*, *aux*, *ici* ; as, jusqu'*à* Paris, jusqu'*au* ciel, jusqu'*ici*.

*I* is cut off in the word *si* before *il*, *ils* ; as, s'*il* arrive, s'*ils* viennent, if he arrive, if they come.

### THE HYPHEN, OR MARK OF UNION.

The *hyphen* ( - ) is placed between all verbs and the pronouns *je*, *me*, *moi*, *tu*, *toi*, *nous*, *il*, *ils*, *elle*, *elles*, *le*, *la*, *les*, *lui*, *leur*, *y*, *en*, *ce*, *on*, when these words come after the verb.

#### EXAMPLES.

| | |
|---|---|
| Irai-je ? viens-tu ? donnez-lui ; | *Shall I go ? comest thou ? give him.* |
| Achevera-t-il ? viendra-t-elle ? | *Will he finish ? will she come ?* |
| A-t-on fait ? prenez-en, etc. | *Have they done ? take some, etc.* |

The mark of union is also placed between two words so joined together as to make but one ; as, *chef-d'œuvre*, master-piece : *courte-pointe*, counterpane ; *avant-coureur*, herald.

### THE DIÆRESIS.

The name *diæresis* ( ¨ ) is given to two points placed over the vowels *ë*, *ï*, *ü*, to show that these letters are to be pronounced separate from the vowel preceding them ; as, *poëte*, poet, pronounced *po-ète* ; *naïf*, artless, pronounced *na-if* ; etc.[1]

### THE CEDILLA.

The *cedilla* ( *ç*) is a little mark placed under *c* before *a*, *o*, *u*, to denote that it ought to have the sound of *ss* ; as in *façon*, fashion, pronounced *fa-sson; leçon*, lesson, pronounced *le-sson* ; etc.

### THE PARENTHESIS.

The *Parenthesis* consists of two crotchets ( ), between which a detached member of a sentence is enclosed. Example ; *Celui qui évite d'apprendre* (dit le Sage) *tombera dans le mal.*

---

[1] The *diæresis* is placed over the mute *e*, and not over the *u*, in the following words ; *aiguë*, *ambiguë*, *ciguë*, and some others, to show that *guë* is not pronounced like *gue* in the words *langue*, *harangue*, *fatigue*, etc.

# EXERCISES;

SELECTED CHIEFLY

FROM WANOSTROCHT.

## EXPLANATION OF THE ABBREVIATIONS

MADE USE OF IN THE FOLLOWING EXERCISES.

---

| | |
|---|---|
| m. | Noun masculine. |
| f. | Noun feminine. |
| pl. | Plural. |
| ∽ | The English word that has this mark under it, is not to be expressed in French. |

The figures, 1 2 3, &c. refer to the arrangement of the words in the French sentence.

Two words having the same figure are expressed by the French word placed under one of them.

Two or three words in the parenthesis ( ), are expressed by the French under them, or have been previously expressed.

# EXERCISES.

## EXERCISES ON THE ARTICLE.

**Before writing these exercises, let the Student read attentively Chapters I. and II. of the Grammar.**

### EXERCISE I.

SEE GRAMMAR: CHAP. II., NOTE: RULE I.

Where is the master of the house? ----- The
*Où est maître*,m. *maison*,f.

prince spoke to the king. ----- To the third
*prince*,m. *parla roi.* *troisième*

page of the book. ---- The[1] lazy[2] do [3]not[5] *
*page*,f. *livre*,m. *paresseux* *ne pas*

love[4] work[6]. ------ Justice is the mistress and
*aiment ouvrage*,m. *Justice*,f. *maîtresse*,f.

queen of virtue. --- Send the child to school. ---
*reine*,f. *Envoyez enfant*,m. *école*,f.

Walk in the garden. ----- Tranquillity
*Promenez-vous* † *dans jardin*,m. *Tranquillité*,f.

---

* In negative sentences in French, *ne* is placed before the verb, and *pas* after it.

† Reflected verbs. See Grammar, pp. 77, 78.

of soul is the height of felicity. - - - Give the tooth-
*âme*,f. *comble*,m. *félicité*,f. *Donnez* *cure-*

picks to the gentlemen. - - - - - - Education is to the
*dent*,m. *Messieurs*,m. *Education*,f.

mind what cleanliness is to the body. - - - - The
*esprit*,m. *ce que* *propreté*,f. *corps*,m.

life of man is short. - - - - - The enemies were on
*vie*,f. *courte.* *ennemi*,m. *étaient sur*

the mountain. - - - - - - You admire the beauty of
*montagne*,f. *Vous* *admirez* *beauté*,f.

the ladies. - - - To the thickness of the walls. - - - We
*dame*,f. *épaisseur*,f. *muraille*,f.

go to the park. - - - - It is the will of the em-
*allons* *parc*,m. *C'est* *volonté*,f. *em-*

peror. - - - - - - The fate of nations is governed by
*pereur*,m. *sort*,m. *nation*,f. *gouverné* *par*

Providence. - - - - You play with the boys. - - - - Re-
*Providence*,f. *jouez avec* *garçon*,m. *Ven-*

venge is the pleasure of a weak[2] mind[1]. - - - -
*geance*,f. *plaisir*,m. *un faible*

Italy is the garden of Europe. - - - - The most noble
*Italie*,f. *Europe*,f. *plus noble*

of virtues is charity. - - - - Carry the grammar to the
*Portez* *grammaire*,f.

boys, and the dictionary to the girls. - - - - He comes
*dictionnaire*,m. *fille*,f. *Il* *vient*

from the Indies. - - - Give me the loaf.
*Inde*,f. *moi* *pain*,m.

## EXERCISE II.

GRAMMAR: CHAP. II., NOTE: RULE II.

I drink wine and water. - - - - - - - - She eats
*bois* *mange*

cheese. - - - Bring me some mustard. - - - Have you
*fromage*,m. *Apportez-moi*

bought some paper, pens, and ink ? - - - Send
*achété* *papier*,m. *plume*,f. *encre*,f.

him some bread, meat, and potatoes. - - - - - - Do you[2]
*lui* *pomme-de-terre*,f. ℘

sell[1] fruit[3] ? - - - - Buy some tea and sugar. - - -
*vendez fruit*,m. *Achetez* *thé*,m.

Will you eat some beef with turnips and
*Voulez* *manger* *bœuf*,m. *navet*,m.

carrots ? - - - Do you[2] drink[1] beer ? - - - (Is there) any
*carotte*,f. ℘ *buvez* *bière*,f. *Y a-t-il*

wine in the cellar ? - - - - (Was there) any oil in the
*cave*,f. *Y avait-il*

bottle ? - - - - - I[1] have[3] given[4] him[2] bread, money, and
*donné* *lui*

clothes. - - - - - She has modesty and prudence. - - -
*habit*,m. *modestie*,f. *prudence*,f.

He has bought some dishes and plates. - - - - - Will
*plat*,m. *assiette*,f.

you have some milk or cream ? - - - I eat fish, eggs,
℘ *œuf*,m.

greens, artichokes, and asparagus. - - - - - Bread, meat,
*légume*, *artichaut*,m. *asperges*,f.pl.

fish, and vegetables often[3] make[1] a good din-
*végétaux*,m. pl. *souvent* *font* *bon* *di-*

ner.
*ner*,m.

## EXERCISE III.

GRAMMAR: CHAP. II., NOTE:

### *Exception to Rule 2.*

You always[2] read[1] good books. - - - - - Bad wine
*toujours* *lisez*

(is not worth) good water. - - - - He speaks to learned
*ne vaut pas* *parle*

men. - - - I have heard good news. - - - - You have
*gens*,f.* *appris* *bonne* *nouvelle*,f. pl. *avez*

fine fruit. - - - She has worthy friends. - - - Bring me
*beau* *digne* *Apportez-moi*

good pens. - - - I have bought six yards of cloth. - -
*acheté* *six* *aune*,f. *drap*,m.

Bring me three pounds of veal, and two pounds of
*trois* *livre*,f. *veau*,m. *deux*

mutton. - - - She has a great number of children. - -
*mouton*,m. *un grand* *nombre*,m.

He has (too much) vanity. - - - - You have less merit,
*trop* *vanité*,f. *moins*

but more wisdom. - - - - - What a noise you make.
*mais* *plus* *sagesse*,f. *bruit*,m. *faites.*

- - - Do [1]not[4] give[3] her[2] (too many) pears. - - - - I[1]
*ne pas* *lui* *trop*

have[3] [2]no[4] daughters.[5] - - - - - (So much) pride
*ai* *ne point* *Tant* *orgueil*,m.

does [1]not[4] become[3] him[2]. - - - (There is) something
*sied* *lui* *Il y a* *quelque chose de*

noble in his physiognomy. - - - - We have (so many)
*sa* *physiognomie.*

grapes. - - - They have a little money.
*raisin*,m. *un peu* *argent*,m.

---

* *Gens*, preceded by an adjective, is of the feminine gender; when the adjective follows, it is of the masculine.

The children make much noise. - - - This man has
*font* *bruit*,m. *Cet*

(a great deal) of money, but he has also many en-
*bien* *argent*,m. *aussi*

emies. - - - They [2]give [1]you much trouble now ;
*donnent* *peine*,f. *à présent ;*

but they will[2] give[2] you[1] afterward much pleasure. - -
*mais* *donneront* *ensuite*

(There were) many ladies in* company (last night).
*Il y avait* *dames* *en* *compagnie* *hier* *au soir.*

---

## EXERCISE IV.

GRAMMAR: CHAP. II., NOTE: RULE III.

*and Exceptions : and Rule* 4.

I hate idleness. - - - Virtue is estimable. - - - - -
*hais* *paresse*,f. *Vertu*,f. *est* *estimable.*

Gold is preferable to silver. - - - - - Do you[2] prefer[1]
*Or*,m. *préférable* *argent*,m. *ơ* *préferez*

England to France ? - - - Corn grows for men,
*Angleterre*,f. *France*,f. *Blé*,m. *croît* *pour* *homme*,m.

and grass for cattle. - - - - Love wisdom. - - - - Do
*et* *herbe*,f. *betail*,m. *Aimez* *sagesse*,f. *ơ*

[1]not[3] neglect[2] study. - - - Avoid leisure. - - - - She
*ne pas* *négligez* *étude*,f. *Evitez* *losir*,m.

comes from church. - - - We speak of America and
*vient* *église*,f. *parlons* *Amérique*,f.

---

* *In* is generally rendered by *en*, when immedietely followed by a noun; and by *dans*, when followed by an article or adjective pronoun.

not of Poland. - - - - Grant us peace. - - - -
*non pas* *Pologne*,f. *Accordez* *nous* *paix*,f.

Honor is due to kings. - - - They come from
*Honneur*,m. *dû* *roi*,m. *viennent*

Africa. - - - Pride disgraces man. - - - Charity pa-
*Afrique*,f. *Orgueil*,m. *dégrade* *Charité*,f. *pa-*

tiently[2] bears[1] injuries[3]. - - - - Jupiter, a god of
*tiemment* *souffre* *injure*,f. *dieu*,m.

the heathens, was the son of Saturn, and the father
*païen*,m. *était* *fils*,m. *Saturne*,

of the other gods. - - - Robert, duke of Normandy,
*autres* *duc*,m. *Normandie*,f.

the brother of Henry, king of England, was the son
*frère* *Henri*,

of William the Conqueror. - - - - My sister lives
*Guillaume le Conquérant*,m. *Ma sœur*,f. *demeure*

at York, the capital[2] city[1] of the county of the
*à* *ville*,f. *comté*,m.

same name. - - - - Mr. C***, the rector of the par-
*même* *nom*,m. *curé*,m. *pa-*

ish of St. James, and his brother, the dean of
*roisse*,f. *Jacques*, *son* *doyen*,m.

the cathedral, were the sons of Mr. L***, the
*cathédrale*,f. *étaient*

first lord of the admiralty.
*premier seigneur* *amiraute*,f.

# EXERCISES OF THE ADJECTIVE.

**Before writing these Exercises, let the pupil read attentively Chapter III. of the Grammar.**

## EXERCISE I.

GRAMMAR: CHAP. III.

### *Formation of the Adjective Feminine.*

* The tall man, the little woman, and the pretty chil-
*grand* *petit* *joli*
dren, whom I met yesterday with their grand-
*que* *ai rencontrés* *hier* *leur*
mother (were going) to London; they were all very
*allaient* *Londres ;* *avaient*
hungry and thirsty. - - - - - The polite[2] inhabitants[1] of
*habitant*,m.
that fine city treat all strangers in a civil[2] and
*cette* *traitent* *etranger*,m. *d'* *une*
frank[3] manner.[1] - - - - - Lean[2] sheep[1] grow
*manière*,f, *Maigre* *les brebis*,f.pl. *deviennent*

---

* When the adjective *grande* precedes a substantive singular of the feminine gender, beginning with a consonant, you often suppress in French, both in the pronunciation and writing, the *e*, which is supplied by an apostrophe, as in the following instances.

| | |
|---|---|
| *A grand' peine ;* | with hard labor. |
| *Avoir* { *grand' faim ;* / *grand' soif ;* / *grand' peur ;* } | to be { very hungry. / very thirsty. / very much frightened. } |
| *Faire grand' chère ;* | to live well, to fare sumptuously. |
| *La grand' mère ;* | the grandmother. |
| *La grand' messe ;* | the high mass. |
| *La grand' chambre ;* | the high court. |

Should, however, the word *grande* be preceded by *très*, *fort*, very, *une*, one, or *la plus*, the most, then the final *e* must be retained; as,

*Une fort grande salle ;* A very large room.

fat in good pastures. - - - - Constant[2] study[1] joined
*dans* *pâturage*,m. *étude*,f. *joint*

to a great application makes men learned. - - - The
*application*,f. *rend* *savant*.

new[2] coat[1], which you gave[2] me[1], is better
*neuf* *habit*,m. *que* *avez donné*, *meilleur*

than the old great-coat which my father had bought
*que* *redingote*,f. *avait achetée*

at his tailor's. - - - We went yesterday to the high
*chez* *allâmes*

court, where we found all the judges already met.
*trouvâmes* *déjà* *assemblés*.

---

## EXERCISE II.

GRAMMAR: CHAP. III.

### *Agreement of the Adjective with the Noun.*

*The book, paper, pencil, and penknife, which
*papier*,m. *crayon*,m. *canif*,m. *que*

you lent[2] me[1], are excellent. - - - - - The pen,
*vous avez prêtés* *me*, *excellent*.

ruler, inkhorn, and grammar, which my brother
*règle*,f. *écritoire*,f. *mon*

has bought, are very good. - - - - - The king, queen,
*a* *achetées* *très*

prince, and princesses were gone. - - - The wheat,
*étaient partis*. *froment*,m.

---

* The article must be repeated before all the substantives of a sentence.

rye, pease, and beans, in a word, all the
*seigle*,m. *pois*,m. *fève*,f. *en* *mot*,m.

grains which were on the ground, were frozen.
*grain*,m. *qui* *étaient* *sur* *terre*,f. *furent* *gelés*.

--- My father's house,* and my uncle's (country seat)
*château*,m.

are (very much) alike.
*bien* *semblable*.

---

## EXERCISE III.

GRAMMAR: CHAP. III., PAGE 11.

### *Degrees of Signification in Adjectives.*

#### 1. COMPARATIVE OF SUPERIORITY.

Miss A. is handsomer and more learned than her
*Mlle.* *plus belle* *savant* *que* *ses*

sisters. --- Lucia is taller and more proud than
*Lucie*,f. *orgueilleux*

her little cousin. ------ His sister is more covetous
*sa* *Sa* *avare*

than he. ---- Nothing is pleasanter to the mind
*lui.* *Rien* *ne* *agréable* *esprit*,m.

than the light of truth. ------ Nothing is more
*lumière*,f. *vérité*,f.

lovely than virtue, and nothing is more desirable
*aimable* *désirable*

---

* The English possessive case is expressed in French, by placing the preposition *de* before the last noun. Thus, *My father's house*, should be rendered, *The house of my father*, etc.

than wisdom. - - - My daughter is taller than your son
*sagesse*,f.

by two inches. - - - - Your brother is taller than you
*de* *pouce*,m.

by the[2] whole[1] head.
*toute* *tête*,f.

### 2. COMPARATIVE OF INFERIORITY.

Mrs. P*** is less polite than her daughter, but her
*Mme.* *poli*

daughter (is not) so revengeful as she. - - - - - You
*n'est pas* *vindicatif*

are[2] [1]not[3] so dutiful as your brother. - - - My fa-
*êtes* *ne pas* *obéissant*

ther is not so rich as yours, but he has not so
*le vôtre*,

much self-love. - - - - - Miss Goodwill has less wit
*amour-propre*,m. *Mlle.*

than her mother. - - - - - - Paris is not so populous as
*peuplé*

London - - - Your companion is neither so prudent nor
*n'est* *ni* *ni*

so circumspect as you.

### 3. COMPARATIVE OF EQUALITY.

Alexander was as ambitious as Cæsar. - - - - - I
*était* *ambitieux* *que* *César*,m.

am as tall as you. - - - Miss D. has as much live-
*suis* *haut* *Mlle.* *a autant de viva-*

liness, and she is as amiable as her cousin. - - - If
*cité*,f. *est* *sa cousine*,f. *Si*

my father were as rich as my uncle, he (would make)
*était* *oncle*,m. *ferait*

a better use of his riches. - - - We have as many
*usage*,m. *ses* *autant*
books as your brothers, and they are as learned as
*vos* *sont*
we. - - - I am as honest and civil as my companions.
*nous*

---

## EXERCISE IV.

### GRAMMAR: CHAP. III.

### OTHER COMPARATIVES AND THE SUPERLATIVE.

The watch which my grandfather has bought is
*montre*,f. *que* *grand-père*,m. *achetée*
better than the clock which he gave to my mother.
*pendule*,f. *a donnée* *mère*,f.
- - - My friend's buckles are better than those of his
*boucle*,f. *celles*
uncle, but mine are worse than his. - - - - -
*oncle*,m. *les miennes* *les siennes*.
The life of a slave is ten times worse than death
*vie*,f. *esclave*,m. *dix fois* *mort*,f.
itself. - - - - The pain which I endure is less than
*même*. *peine*,f. *que* *souffre*
that which is inflicted on galley-slaves.
*celle* *qui* *infligée* *aux* *galériens*,m.
God is a being infinitely great and perfect. - - - -
*être*,m. *parfait*.
I am your most humble and obedient servant. - - - -
*très* *obéissant* *serviteur*,m.
The front of your house is very beautiful. - - - You
*façade*,f. *beau*.

are very good, but your brother is very wicked. - - -
*mais* *méchant*

My uncle has a very fine country house, and very
*campagne*

spacious[2] gardens[1]. - - - My best friend is dead. - -
*spacieux* *meilleur*

Our common enemy has [1]the[3] most[4] inveterate[5]
*Notre* *commun* *invétérée*

hatred[2] against this country. - - - - - Their least em-
*haine*,f. *contre* *ce* *pays*,m. *Leurs* *em-*

barrassments make their greatest delight. - - - Pride
*barras*,m. *font* *délices*,f.pl. *Orgueil*,m.

and passion are his least defects.
*colère*,f. *ses* *défaut*,m.

---

## EXERCISE V.

### GRAMMAR: CHAP. III.

### NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES OF NUMBER.

I was in the company of seven gentlemen and
*compagnie*,f. *messieurs*

nine ladies. - - - He has spoken to three officers and
*dame* *parlé*

two generals. - - - - If I had a* hundred guineas, I
*avais* *guinée*

would[2] lend[3] you[1] eighty. - - - The army of our
*en* *prêterais* *armée*,f. *nos*

allies was composed of a hundred thousand men of
*allié*,m. *était* *composée*

---

* The English article *a* or *one* is not expressed in French.

foot, and twenty thousand of horse. - - - They
*infanterie*,f. *cavalerie*,f.

took fifteen hundred men prisoners, killed
*prirent* *prisonnier*,m. *en tuèrent*

four thousand, wounded a thousand, and (carried
*en blessèrent* *em-*

away) above two millions in specie. - - The battle
*portèrent plus de* *espèces*,f. *battaille*,f.

(was fought) in one thousand* eight hundred and four-
*se livra* *en* ℒ

teen, at three o'clock (in the) morning.
*heure*,f. *du* *matin.*

GRAMMAR : CHAP. III.

*Note on the Use of the Cardinal Numbers in Dates.*

My friend will come (to see)[2] us[1] on the fifth
*viendra* *voir* ℒ

of next[2] month.[1] - - - - - Lady[2] day[1] falls
*du* *prochain* *mois*,m. *Notre Dame* *jour*,m. *tombe*

on the twenty-fifth of March. - - - - - In the leap[2]
ℒ *Mars*,m. *bissextile*

year[1], the month of February has one day more,
*année*,f. *Février*,m. *de plus*,

which is the twenty-ninth. - - - The first of November
*qui* *Novembre*,m.

is (all-saints-day), and the fifth of the same month
*la toussaint*,f. *même* *mois*,m.

is the day of the Gunpowder[2] plot[1]. - - - - - Come on
*des poudres*,pl. *conspiration*,f. *Venez* ℒ

the first day of July.
*Juillet*,m.

---

* Mentioning the date of the year, we must write *mil*, and not *mille*, Ex. *L'an* mil *huit cent quinze*, the year 1815.

The compound English nouns, of which one part expresses a person or thing, and the other designates its *occupation*, *quality*, or *use*, are turned into French by inverting the order of the words and connecting them by *au*, *à la*, or *aux* ; as,

| | |
|---|---|
| *Le pot* au *lait*, | The milk-pot. |
| *La femme* aux *pommes*, | The apple-woman. |
| *Une cruche* à l'*eau*, | A water-jug. |

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

Tell the servant to bring[2] me[1]
*Dites au* or *à la domestique*,m.&f. *de apporter me*

the tea-canister, sugar-dish, and cream-basin.
*thé*,m. *boîte*,f. *sucre*,m. *pot*,m. *crême*,f. *bassin*,m.

---- Go to the wine-cellar and bring[2] us[1]*
*Allez vin*,m. *cave*,f. *apportez*

the vinegar-bottle. ---- (There is) the oyster-
*vinaigre*,m. *bouteille*,f. *huître*,f. pl.

woman. ------ I live in the hay-market, my
*demeure foin*,m. *marché*,m. *mon*

cousin in the fish-market, and my sister in the
*poisson*,m. *ma*

poultry-market. --- Give me the oil-bottle, pepper-
*volaille*,f. *moi huille*,f. *poivre*,m.

box, and mustard-pot. ---- The butter-boy, the
*boîte*,f. *moutarde*,f. *beurre*,m.

greens-girl, the hot[3] rolls[2] man[1], and the
*légume*,m.pl. *chaud pain*,m.pl.

gingerbread-woman called here. ----- We had
*pain d'épices*,m. *ont passé ici*. *eûmes*

---

* Though the rule requires that a pronoun governed by a verb in the imperative mood should be placed after the verb, yet when the imperative is repeated, as here, the pronoun may be placed first.

cabbage-soup, a rice-pudding, a (leg of
*chou*,m.pl. *de la soupe*, *un* *riz*,m. *pouding*,m. *gi-*

mutton) with caper-sauce, and (ice-cream). - - -
*got*,m. *capre*,f.pl. *de la sauce*,f. *glace*,f.pl.

We shall have pease-porridge, a salt[2] cod[1], with
*aurons* *pois*,m. *de la soupe*, *une salée morue*,f

egg-sauce, and a turbot, with lobster-sauce. - - - - I
*œuf*,m.pl. *turbot*,m. *homard*,m.pl.

bought a plum cake, an apple tart,
*ai acheté* *raisins secs*,m. *gâteau*,m. *pomme*,f.pl. *tourte*,f.

and two gooseberry and cherry pies.
*groseille*,f.pl. *cerise*,f.pl.

---

## EXERCISES ON THE PRONOUNS.

### EXERCISE I.

#### PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

GRAMMAR: CHAP. IV. AND NOTES.

Your brother bought yesterday a very good book,
*Votre* *achela*

and after having[2] read[3] it[1], he gave[2] it[1] to my sis-
*après* *avoir* *lu* *le* *donna* *ma*

ter. - - - You speak of my cousin; do you[3] know[2]
*mon* *ơ* *connaissez*

him[1]? - - - - I see her and speak to her (every day).
*vois* *parle* *tous les jours.*

- - - Do you[2] know[1] your lessons? - - - - - We know
*ơ* *savez* *vos* *leçon*,f.pl. *savons*

them all. - - - I (will carry) them to my brothers,
*tout.* *mènerai* *chez* *mes*

but I (will write) to them before. - - - I find him
*écrirai* *auparavant* *trouve*

more reasonable than his sister. - - - Your dog (is
*raisonnable* *sa* *chien*,m. *a*

thirsty) ; shall[2] I[3] give[2] him[1] water ? - - - - - They
*soif ;* *donnerai* *lui*

are tired, and I give them some rest.
*fatigué,* *donne* *repos*,m.

* My brother (will send)[3] them[2] (to you)[1], or he
*enverra*

(will bring)[3] them[2] (to you)[1] himself. - - - - - He likes
*apportera* *lui-même.* *aime*

your[2] house[3] (very much)[1] ; for we showed it to
*votre* *fort* *car* *fîmes voir*

him. - - - Carry it to them. - - - He will[2] [1]not[3] sell[6]
*Portez* *veut ne pas vendre*

it[4] (to them)[5], but he will give it to you.
*veut* *donner*

---

* When two or more of the conjunctive pronouns come together in the same sentence, they must be arranged in the following order ; *Me, Te, Se, Nous, Vous* (*Se* pl.) : — *Le, La, Les* : — *Lui* : — *Leur* : *Y, En.*

*Il* me le *promit* ; He promised *it to me.*
*Je* vous les *donnerai ;* I will give *them to you.*

To this rule there is one solitary exception. It is when *moi* and *y* come after a verb in the Imperative mood ; as, *menez-y moi,* Carry me thither.

## EXERCISE II.

### PRONOUNS GOVERNED BY THE IMPERATIVE MODE.

* Send them some apples, but do [1]not[4] send[3]
*Envoyez* *ꝯ*
them[2] any plums. --- I give you these books, but do
*prune*,f. *donne* *ces* *ꝯ*
not lend them to your brother. --- You may tell
*prêtez* *votre* *pouvez* *dire*
it to my father, but do not tell it to my mother. --
*mon* *ꝯ* *dites* *ma*
Believe me, go and speak to them, but do not in-
*Croyez* *allez* *parler* *ꝯ* *in-
sult them. ----- Have you returned (to her) the
*sultez* *rendu*
handkerchief which she has lent you ? ---- Send it
*mouchoir*,m. *que* *prêté*
to-morrow, do not forget it. ---- Bring me some
*demain* *ꝯ* *oubliez* *Apportez*
chocolate, but bring[3] me[2] [1]no[4] sugar.
*chocolat*,m.

---

## EXERCISE III.

### GRAMMAR : CHAP. IV. THE PRONOUN EN.

I have heard that your uncle is arrived, and
*ouï* *dire* *arrivé*

---

* In the *second* person singular and the *first* and *second* persons plural of a verb in the Imperative mood conjugated *affirmatively*, the conjunctive pronouns come after the verb ; but if the verb be conjugated *negatively*, the pronouns follow the general rule ; Ex.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Donnez* lui *de l'argent ;* | Give *him* money. |
| *Ne* lui *donnez pas de pain ;* | Do not give *him* any bread. |

I[1] am[3] very[4] glad[5] (of it)[2]. - - - - She spoke[3] to him[1]
*aise* *en* *parla*

(of it)[2]. - - - - - Talk[3] no[1] more[4] (of it)[2], for I[1] will[3]
*Parlez* *ne* *plus* *car* *veux*

not[2] hear[6] (of it)[5] (any more)[4]. - - - I[1] thank[4]
*ne* *entendre* *parler* *plus* *remercie*

you[2] (for it)[3]. - - - Do you[4] [1]not[5] see[3] the beauty (of
ℒ *voyez*

it)[2] ? - - - - They are sorry for it. - - - - Since you
*sont* *fâché* *Puisque*

have no pears in your garden, I (will send) you
*poire*,f. *enverrai*

some. - - - They[1] have[4] stolen[5] from us[2] the[6] greatest[7]
*en* *ont* *volé* ℒ

part[8] (of them)[3]. - - - My brother has written a let-
*partie*,f. *Mon* *écrit*

ter to your sister, and shown[3] me[1] the[4] two[5] first[6]
*a* *montré*

lines[7] (of it)[2]. - - - Will you lend me some books ?
*ligne*,f. *Voulez* *prêter*

With all my heart, I[1] (will lend)[4] you[2] [3]some[5] very
*De* *cœur*,m. *prêterai* *en de*

pretty ones. - - - - - - Do you[2] think[1] that[3] she[4] has[7]
ℒ ℒ *croyez* *ait*

spoken[8] (to him)[5] (of it)[6] ? - - - If I had money, I
*parlé* *avais*

(would give) you some, but you know, as well as I
*donnerais* *mais* *savez* *aussi* *moi**

do, how scarce[3] it[1] is[2] now. - - - - - Send[4] me[2]
ℒ *combien* *rare* *à présent.* *Envoyez*

[1]none[3] [5]. - - Have[2] you[3] any[1] ? - - - Do [1]you[4] remember[3]
*ne en pas* *Avez* *souvenez*

it[2] ?

---

* See the rule for using *Je* and *Moi* ; Grammar, Chap. iv. pp. 13, 14.

## EXERCISE IV.

GRAMMAR: CHAP. IV. THE PRONOUN *Y*.

I[1] [2]never[5] (will consent)[4] (to it)[3], and I[1] [2]neither[4] will[3] speak[6], nor[7] write[9] to [5]him[8]. - - - - - Believe
*ne jamais consentirai* *ne ni veux parler ni écrire* *Croyez*

me, go and see them, do [1]not[5] [4]confide[2] (in it)[3].
*allez & & fiez vous*

- - - We[1] have[4] forced[5] them[2] to it[3]. - - I (will carry)[2]
*avons forcé* *mènerai*

my[3] brother[4] thither[1] myself.[5] - - - - - He[1] (will carry)[5]
*portera*

them[3] to you[2] thither[4] himself. - - - Did you think of
*y* *Avez pensé à*

what you had promised me ? - - - - No, but[1] I[2] will
*ce que aviez promis* *Non, pen-*

think[4] (of it)[3]. - - - - (It is) a good book ; we[1] read[3]
*serai y* *C'est* *on lit*

excellent[4] things[5] (in it)[2]. - - - Our orchards are very
*chose*,f. *Nos verger*,m.

fruitful ; we[1] see all sorts of fruits (in them)[3]. - - -
*fertile ; on voit sorte*,f. *fruit*

Since those people have deceived you, do not trust
*Puisque ces gens*,pl. *trompé & fiez*

them (any more). - - - Often when a friend is dead,
*plus* *Souvent* *mort*,

we[1] think[4] (of him)[3] no[2] longer[5].
*on pense* *plus.*

## EXERCISE V.

GRAMMAR . CHAP. IV. RULE OF PRONOUNS.

This picture is very old, but it is well painted.
*Ce portrait*,m. *ancien* *bien peint.*

--- The house which I have bought is well situated,
*que* *ai achetée* *située*,

but I assure[2] you[1] that it costs[2] me[1] much. --- The
*assure* *que* *coûte me beaucoup.*

books which you saw in my library are good
*vîtes* *ma bibliothèque*,f.

books, but they are badly bound. ---- Your buckles
*mal relié.* *Vos boucle*,f.

(would be) much more in the fashion, if they were
*seraient* *à* *mode*,f. *étaient*

smaller. ----- My hat is quite new, but it is too
*Mon* *tout neuf*, *trop*

big. --- Their coach is old, but it is as good
*grand.* *Leur carrosse*,m. *vieux*

as if it were new.
*si était neuf.*

---

## EXERCISE VI.

GRAMMAR : CHAP. IV. ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS, 1.

Give me my dictionary and grammar. ---- She
*dictionnaire*,m. *grammaire*,f.

had lost her gloves and fan. ----- Have you
*avait perdu* *évantail*,m. *Avez*

found your pen ? --- His daughter is older than
*trouvé* *plume*,f. *fille*,f. *plus agée*

my son, but her son (is not) so tall as my
*fils*,m. *n'est pas* *grand*

nephew. - - - Her brother says that he will[3] [1]not[4] re-
*neveu*,m. *dit* *re-*

fuse[3] you[2] what you ask of him. - - - - - Dear
*fusera* *ce que* *demandez* *de* *Mon cher*

father, pray forgive me. - - - My ambition is the
*de grâce* *ambition*,f.

only cause of my imprudence. - - - I have seen your
*seul* *cause*,f. *imprudence*,f. *ai* *vu*

father, mother, brothers, and sisters. - - - Her affection
*affection*,f.

for me is false. - - - - Your daughter is handsomer
*pour* *faux.* *beau*

than mine, but mine has more wit than yours. - - - -
*esprit*

Her house is more convenient than ours, but yours is
*commode*

not so well situated as theirs.

---

## EXERCISE VII.

GRAMMAR: CHAP. IV. ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS, 2.

* He who supports idleness (makes himself)
*Celui qui* *encourage* *se rend*

despicable. - - - She whom you saw at my brother's
*méprisable* *vîtes* *chez*

---

* *He, she, they, him, her, them*, being immediately followed in a sentence by *who, whom*, or *that*, used in an indeterminate sense, not relating to any individual mentioned before, and only implying *any person, one* or *anybody*, must not be rendered in French by the personal pronouns *il, elle*, &c. but by the pronouns *celui, celle*, &c.

is not yet married. --- You punish him who is
*encore* *marié* *punissez*

not guilty. -- Men commonly[2] hate[1] him whom
*coupable* *ordinairement* *haïssent* *que*

they fear. --- She whom you hate is my best friend.
*craignent* *haïssez* *amie*,f.

--- You have punished him who did not deserve it,
*puni* *ø* *méritait*

and rewarded her who was guilty. --- We (ought
*récompensé* *de-*

to) pray for them who persecute us. ---- Of all
*vons* *qui* *persécutent*

virtues, that which most[2] distinguishes[1] a Christian is
*qui* *le plus* *distingue*

charity.

---

## EXERCISE VIII.

GRAMMAR: CHAP. IV. ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS, 2.

She who dines with us is (my brother's)[2] wife[1]. --
*Celle* *dine* *avec* *de mon frère* *femme*,f.

She brought her picture, and that of her hus-
*a apporté* *portrait*,m. *celui* *ma-*

band. --- I have seen the king's palace, and that
*ri*,m. *ai* *vu* *palais*,m.

of the queen. --- * That watch which you showed
*montre*,f. *que* *avez montrée*

---

* *Ce, cette, ces*, this, that, these, those, always precede the substantive to which they are joined, and agree with it in gender, number, and case. On the contrary, *celui, celle, celui-ci, celle-ci, celui-là, celle-là*, this, that, &c., either in the singular or plural, are *never* joined to any noun; for the noun to which they refer is always implied in the pronoun.

me, is not yours ; it is that of your brother. - - - I
*c'est* *celle*

have lost my buckles and those of your cousin. - - -
*perdu* *cousin*,m.

Your books and those of your little sister are torn. - -
*petit* *déchiré.*

I know this cap, it is that of your mother.
*connais* *bonnet*,m. *c'est*

---

## EXERCISE IX.

GRAMMAR : CHAP. IV. PRONOUNS.

*Celui-ci ; Celui-là. Celle-ci ; Celle-là.*

Learn this lesson, it is not so difficult as
*Apprenez* *celle* *leçon-ci* *difficile*

that. - - - I prefer this way to that road. - - - This
*préfère* *chemin*,m. *route*,f.

room is much larger than that parlour. - - - - - These
*grand* *salon*,m.

candles are better than those. - - - (There was) a
*chandelle*,f. *Il y eut*

great battle between George and Stephen ; the
*combat*,m. *entre* *Etienne ;*

former had a broken[2] nose[1], and the latter lost a
*celui-là* *eut* *le* *cassé* *nez*,m. *celui-ci* *perdit*

tooth. - - - - - In the engagements which took place
*bataille*,f. *qui* *eurent lieu*,m.

between the Austrians and the French, the former
*entre* *Autrichien*,m. *Français*,m.

lost two thousand men, and the latter fifteen hun-
*perdirent* *homme*

dred.

## EXERCISE X.

GRAMMAR : CHAP IV. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

The man who sold me these pens is very cun-
*a vendu* *ru-*

ning. - - - The lady of whom you speak is not hand-
*sé* *dame*,f. *parlez*

some. - - - Miss D***, whom you love so much, is
*Mlle.* *aimez* *tant*

very ill. - - - The person to whom I wrote last
*malade.* *personne*,f, *ai écrit* *passé*

year has answered me this morning. - - - He who
*année*,f. *répondu* *matin*,m.

was with you, related to me (every thing) that
*était* *a raconté* *tout* *ce* *qui*

had passed. - - - She will not hear of the
*s'était* *passé.* *veut* *entendre* *parler*

lady whom he (is going to) marry. - - - Shun vice,
*va* *épouser* *Evitez* *vice*,m.

and love *what is good. - - Who was with you ? - -
*aimez* *bon.* *était* *avec*

It was a gentleman whose[1] name[6] I[2] know[4] [3]not[5].
*Ce* *monsieur*,m. *dont* *nom*,m. *sais*

- - - Men generally[2] love[1] him who flatters them. - -
*généralement* *flatte*

The man I sent you was honest. - - - - †Whose[1]
*ai envoyé* *A qui*

sword[4] is[2] this[3] ? - - - You speak of the lady whose
*parlez*

husband has been so ill.
*mari*,m. *été* *malade.*

---

* *Ce qui*, in the nominative case, *ce que*, in the objective. This pronoun is never joined to any noun; it may always be turned into *that which*, or *the thing which*.

† *Whose*, used interrogatively, must be rendered into French by *à qui*.

## EXERCISE XI.

GRAMMAR: CHAP. IV. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

Who was the first king of France? --- Who can
*fut* *peut*

give credit to a young man who does not speak
*ajouter* *foi* *jeune* *ne* *dit*

the truth? --- Of whom were[1] you[2] speaking[1], when
*vérité*,f. *parliez*

I came? -- To whom did you lend my slate? --
*vins* *avez* *prêté* *ardoise*,f.

Whom do you seek? --- Who told it to you? --
*ne* *cherchez* *a dit*

From whom do you know it? --- What[1] are[2]
*ne* *savez* *Qu'est-ce que*

you[1] doing[2]? --- What do you say? -- What do you
*faites* *dites*

ask of me? ---- Who is the man who can
*demandez* *ne* *peut*

boast of being without defect? --- What is the
*se vanter de être sans défaut*,m.

name of your father? --- What is his occupation?
*nom*,m. *occupation*,f.

--- What are his amusements? --- What is his
*sont* *plaisir*,m. *sont*

business? --- In what city does he[2] live[1]?
*affaires*,f.pl. *ville*,f. *ne* *demeure*?

In order to avoid repetition, *lequel*, *laquelle*, which, are used as substantives for *quel*, or *quelle*, and the substantive to which it is joined.

One of your cousins is arrived from the conti-
*cousin*,m. *arrivé* *conti-*

nent: which is it? ----- One of your aunts was
*nent*,m. *est-ce* *était*

ill last week, which was it ? - - - - I have
*malade dernière semaine*,f.

heard that two[1] horses[4] of[2] yours[3] were lost ;
*ouï dire* *étaient perdus*

tell me which.
*dites*

---

## EXERCISE XII.

### INDEFINITE PRONOUNS. CLASS 1.

People imagine that when they are rich, they are
*On s'imagine que quand on est*

happy ; but they (are mistaken) very often ; for the
*heureux* *se trompe très souvent car* ơ

more one has, the more one wishes to have. - - - -
*on* ơ *veut* ơ *avoir.*

Somebody knocks at the door, go and open it. - -
*frappe* *allez ouvrir*

Is there any of these ladies who has found my color-
*Y a-t-il,* *dame*,f. *ait trouvé*

box ? - - - Have you any (raspberry bushes) in your
*des framboisier*,m.

garden ? I have some. - - - Has he any vines ? Yes,
*A-t-il* *Oui*

he has some. - - - Whoever believes every thing which
*croit tout ce que*

(he is told), is often deceived. - - - He (is ordered)
*on lui dit* *trompé* *a ordre*

to stop every one that shall go that way. - - - -
*d' arrêter* *passera par-là.*

Trees bear their fruits each in its season. - - -
*Arbre*,m. *portent* *dans*

(Let us give) to every one what belongs to him. - -
*Rendons* *appartient*

Let every one meddle with his own business. - - - -
*Que* *se mêle* *de* *propre* *affaires*,pl.

Other people's opinions are not the rule of mine.
*sentiment*,m. *règle*,f.

- - - Do not speak ill of other people, if you (will
*ne* *parlez mal* *voulez*

have) nobody* speak ill of you. - - - - Nobody can
*que* *parle*

boast of being without imperfections. - - - As . no-
*se vanter* *être* *sans* *Comme*

body speaks to you, you ought not to speak to any
*parle* *devez* *ne* *parler*

body. - - - - Did[2] ever any body[1] know in what
*A-t-il* *jamais* *connu* *en*

happiness consists ?
*bonheur*,m. *consiste*

---

## EXERCISE XIII.

### INDEFINITE PRONOUNS. CLASS 2.

When he comes to see us, he has always some
*Quand* *vient* *ne* *voir*

tale to tell us. - - - - - He promised to bring me
*conte*,m. *à faire* *a promis* *de*

some filberts and chestnuts. - - - Have you heard any
*aveline*,f. *châtaigne*,f. *appris*

---

* *Personne* requires *ne* before the verb, except in interrogative sentences.

news ? - - - Every thing in its time. - - - Every vir-
*nouvelle* *chose*,f. *dans* *temps*,m.

tue has its reward, and each vice has its pun-
*récompense*,f. *châti-*

ishment - - - - Let every soldier keep his post,
*iment*,m. *Que* *se tienne à* *poste*,m.

to avoid any surprise from the enemy. - - -
*pour éviter* *toute surprise*,f. *de la part de* *l'ennemi*

There is no reason whatever, that can[1] oblige[4] him[2]
*Il* *n'y a* *raison*,f. *puisse*

(to it)[3]. - - - By no means whatever. - - - A certain
*En* *nulle* *façon*

man told me a certain (piece of news) which
*homme*,m. *m'a* *dit* *nouvelle*,f.

appears to me (of a very dubious character).
*paraît* *fort sujette à caution.*

---

## EXERCISE XIV.

### INDEFINITE PRONOUNS. CLASS 3.

No man, no woman. - - - - (It is to be found) no
*Nul* *On ne le* *trouve*

where. - - - - No one is innocent before God. - - - -
*part*,f. *n'est* *devant*

None* of the books which you saw me buying
*Aucun* *avez vu* *acheter*

pleases me. - - - - - Of all the apples which you
*plait* *pomme*,f.

gave me, none is yet fit to eat.
*avez données* *encore bon à manger.*

---

* *Nul* and *aucun* require the particle *ne* before the verb which follows them, except in interrogative sentences.

Fire and water destroy one another. - - - - My
*se détruisent l'un l'autre*

sisters can not bear each other. - - - Love
*peuvent se souffrir Aimez-vous*

one another, said our Lord. - - - - It is the same
*dit Seigneur*,m. *C'est*

thing. - - - Such was the discourse he pronounced. - - -
*chose*,f. *fut qu'il tint*

Mr. Such-a-one ; Mrs. Such-a-one. - - - I told you
*un tel vous l'ai dit*

so many times. - - - Every man is subject to death. - -
*fois*,f. *est mort*,f.

All the world talk of it, and many people believe
*monde*,m *parle* *croient*

it.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS. CLASS 4.

Whoever (it may be), let him (come in). - - - - I
*ce soit qu'il entre*

will do my duty, whatever happens. - - - - What-
*ferai devoir*,m. *il en arrive*

ever (may be) his character. - - - However poor he
*soit caractère*,m. *pauvre*

may be, he is an honest man. - - - You see it,
*puisse voyez*

such as it is.

## EXERCISES ON THE VERB.

### THE AUXILIARY VERBS AVOIR AND ÊTRE.

GRAMMAR: CHAP. V.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I have a book. --- I am happy. ---- He
*heureux*
has a hat which is too big. --- We have no mon-
*trop grand* *ar-*
ey. ---- We are not ambitious. ---- You have a
*gent.* *ambitieux*
sword. --- You are very proud. --- Those girls
*orgueilleux*
have modesty ; they are virtuous.
*modestie*,f. *vertueux.*

IMP. I had a friend. --- I was grateful. --- My
*reconnaissant*
sister had no work ; she was lazy. --- We had
*ouvrage*,m. *paresseux*
a holiday ; we were very glad of it. --- You had
*congé*,m. *aise*
company ; but you were not ready. ----- Your
*compagnie*,f. *mais* *prèt*
brothers had learning ; they were loved by every-
*savoir*,m. *aimé* *de*
body.

PRET. (As soon as) I had a fine horse, I was
*Dès que*
merry. ---- My cousin had a little garden. ---
*de bonne humeur.* *cousin*,m.

As soon as we had bread we were satisfied. -- You
*pain*,m. *rassasié*
had fine weather; you were pleased. --- Your friends
*temps*,m. *content*
had beautiful flowers; they were very careful of
*soigneux*
them.

FUT. I shall have discretion; I shall be prudent.
*discrétion*,f.
--- Miss White shall have a bird which will be
*oiseau*,m.
very tame. ---- We shall have no books; we shall
*apprivoisé*
not be learned. --- You shall have pens and paper;
*savant*
you will be busy. --- The French will have a good
*occupé*
admiral; they will be victorious.
*amiral*,m. *victorieux*

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

I should have a pretty dog. --- I would not be
*joli* *chien*,m.
troublesome. --- Mr. Thomas would have good wine;
*importun*
it would be a delicious thing. ---- We should have
*ce* *délicieux* *chose*,f.
a dictionary; we should not be negligent. --- You
would have good officers; you would be invincible. -
*invincible*
These ladies would have a better reception; they
*accueil*,m.
would be thankful.
*reconnaissant*

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Have patience and be indulgent. - - - Let her have a gown ; let her be happy. - - - - - Let us have at
*au*
least some gratitude ; let us be diligent. - - - -
*moins* *reconnaissance*,f.
Let them have partridges ; let them be merry.
*perdrix*,f. *joyeux*

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres. That I may have riches. - - - That I may be charitable. - - - That he may have scholars. - - - - That he may be attentive. - - - That we may have a
*attentif*
good house. - - - That we may be well lodged. - - -
*bien logé*
That you may have your money ; that you may be
*argent*,m.
paid. - - - That they may have apples ; that they may
*payé*
be ripe.
*mûr*

Imp. That I might have generosity. - - - - - That I
*générosité*,f.
might not be poor. - - - That he might have no pleas-
*pauvre*,m. *plai-*
ure. - - - - That he might be uneasy. - - - - That we
*sir* *inquiet*
might have our share. - - - That we might not be
*part*,f.

deceived. - - - - - That you might have a couple of
*trompés* *couple*,f.
chickens. - - - That you might be pleased. - - - That
*content*
they might have no pension. - - - That they might not
be rewarded.
*récompensés*

---

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES UPON THE COMPOUND TENSES.

I have had (a great deal) of trouble ; I have not
*bien* *peine*,f.
been rewarded. - - - - Your brother would have had
leave, if he had been* diligent. - - - If you had
*permission*,
married him, you would have had a tyrant, instead
*épousé* *tyran*,m. *au lieu*
of a husband ; you [1]never[3] (would have)[2] been[4] hap-
*mari*,m. *ne jamais* †
py. - - - If we had fought, we should not have been
*combattu*
conquered. - - - - Thomas has had two holidays, be-
*vaincus* *congé*,m. *par-*
cause he has been very active. - - - Your friend
*ceque* *actif*
should have had a better watch ; he would not
*montre*,f.

---

* See the rule for using the pluperfect tense : Grammar, page 26.
† In negative sentences, when the verb is in a compound tense, the second adverb of negation must be placed between the verb and the passive participle.

have been cheated. - - - - Your uncle and my brother
*trompé.*
have been wet.
*mouillés.*

---

## VERBS CONJUGATED INTERROGATIVELY.

GRAMMAR: PAGE 43.

**The student will recollect, that in interrogative sentences the pronoun is put after the verb.**

Have I my books ? - - - * Am I not unhappy to
*malheureux de*
have lost his friendship ? - - - Has he no money ? - -
*perdu* *amitié*, f. *pas de*
† Is my sister arrived ? - - - Has not your father a
*Ma sœur, est-elle arrivée ?*
great deal of friendship for you ? - - - Have not your
parents sent you all the money which you wanted ?
*envoyé* *dont aviez besoin*, m.
Have we not a garden ? - - Are we not very happy ?

---

* See page 44 of the Grammar: Note.

† In interrogations, it must be observed, that when there is a *noun* standing as the nominative to a verb, this noun must be placed first in the sentence, and one of the pronouns *il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles*, must be expressed in French, immediately after the verb, according to the person and number; and when the verb terminates with a vowel, a *t* is to be placed in the third person singular between the verb and the pronoun, to avoid the *hiatus*, the noun beginning the phrase; Ex.

Votre oncle, *a-t-il* des enfans ? Has *your uncle* any children ?

that is, Your uncle, *has he* any children ?

-- Have you a good gun ? --- Are you dexterous ?
*fusil*,m. *adroit ?*

-- Are not Paul and Thomas two pretty children ? --
*joli*

Are your brothers arrived ? ---- Are you not very

glad to see them ?
*de voir*

Have[3] they[4] [1]not[5] spoken[6] to him[2] ? --- Had you
*parlé*

not a little dog ? -- Was not your paper very good ?

--- Are not the (English ladies) generally hand-
*Anglaises* *généralement*

somer than the French ? --- Shall you have occasion
*Françaises ?* *besoin*,m.

for your dictionary ? --- Shall I not have the pleas-
*de*

ure to see you to-morrow ? --- Were you not in the
*de* *demain ?*

room ? ----- Shall we not have leave ? ---- Will
*chambre*,f.

they not be angry ? --- Would you not have had a
*fâché ?*

better watch ? --- If France were as rich as Eng-
*Si* *était*

land, would it not be the best country in the world ?
*ce* *pais* *de*

--- Will you not be ashamed ? ----- Has not your
*honteux ?*

friend had bad weather ? --- Had not our admi-
*mauvais* *temps*,m.

ral better seamen than yours ? --- Has he been vic-
*matelot*,m. *vic-*

torious ? --- Would not your hat be too big ? ----
*torieux ?* *grand?*

Is not your sister older than mine ? - - - Are you not
*âgé*
happier than if you were married ? - - - Shall not John
*marié ?* *Jean*
have a holiday, if he is diligent ? - - - Has not your
*congé*,m. *est*
cousin more money than you ? - - Was not your wine
very dear ?

---

## EXERCISES ON THE REGULAR VERBS.

### VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

GRAMMAR : PAGE 33.

Before writing these exercises, let the student read attentively the observations which follow this conjugation in the Grammar.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I play sometimes,* but I never win. - -
*jou-er quelquefois* *mais* *ne jamais gagn-er.*
How much does your brother give for his board.
*Combien* *doun-er* *pension*,f.
- - We do not command ; we entreat. - - You always
*command-er ;* *pri-er.* *toujours*
borrow ; you never lend. - - - - † You are always
*emprunt-er ;* *prêt-er.*

---

* In simple tenses, the adverb is generally placed after the verb, and in compound tenses, between the auxiliary and the participle. Compound adverbs are, however, frequently placed after the passive participle.

† When in English, a participle active is joined to any of the tenses of the auxiliary verb *to be*, to express the continuation of an action, the

**speaking** when I write. - - - - - Why do you not
*quand* *écris.* *Pourquoi* ơ

**grant** him that favor ? - - - - - What do they
*accord-er* *grâce*,f.

**ask** you.
*demand-er*

IMP. I was desiring them to sing a song. - - -
*pri-er* *de chanter* *chanson*,f.

She was not speaking to you. - - - - - Were we not

joking ? - - - Were you not scolding them when I
*badiner ?* *grond-er*

came ? * Yes I was. - - They were eating fish.
*vins ?* *mang-er* *poisson*,m.

PRET. I spoke to them (a long while). - - - - - Did
*long-temps.*

not the king forgive them ? No, he did not. - - -
*roi*,m. *pardonn-er*

We wept for joy when we found her. - - - Why
*pleur-er* *de joie* *trouv-er*

did you not play on Friday last ? - - - - - They
ơ *Vendredi* *dernier ?*

fastened the man to a tree, and then robbed him
*li-er* *arbre*,m. *ensuite* *vol-er*

---

auxiliary must be left out in French, and the participle put in the same tense, &c. with the auxiliary that is suppressed ;

*Je parle*, I *am* speaking.
*Vous parlez*, you *are* speaking.
*Nous danserons*, we *shall be* dancing.
*Je priais*, I *was* desiring.
*Nous chantions*, we *were* singing.
*Ils écriraient*, they *would be* writing.

And not *Je* suis *parlant*, *vous* êtes *parlant*, *J'*étais *priant*, &c.: *nous* serons *dansant*, *ils* seraient *écrivant*, &c.

* *Scolding them*, here understood in English, must be expressed in French. In all similar instances, the preceding verb and pronoun must be repeated in French.

of his watch, gold ring, and all the money he
*de* *montre*,f. *bague*,f.
had in his pocket. - - - The soldiers first pillaged
*avait* *poche*,f. *d'abord* *pill-er*
the town, and then slaughtered without pity, the
*puis* *égorg-er* *pitié*,f.
old men, women, and children.
*vieillard*,m.

FUT. I will buy a watch the first time* I go
*achet-er* *fois*,f. *irai*
to London. - - - - Will not your father send you to
*Londres.* *enverra*
school this winter ? - - - What shall we give him ? - -
*école*,f. *hiver*,m.
Will you not carry the children to the play ? - - -
*men-er* *enfant*,m. *comédie*,f.
They will empty the bottle if you do not take
*vid-er* *bouteille*,f. *de* *emport-er*
it away.
*de*

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

I would lend them money if they were not so
*prêt-er* *leur*
idle. - - - - Would not your mother despise such[2] a[1]
*paresseux.* *mépris-er* *tel*
conduct ? - - - Why should we send them thither ? - -
*conduite*,f.
I am sure you would marry her, if she were
*sûr* *épous-er* *était*
rich. - - Would they not pay us, if they had money ?
*riche.* *pay-er*

---

* The conjunction *que*, that, is never suppressed in French.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Bridle my horse, and bring* him to me. - -
*Brid-er* *cheval*,m. *amen-er*

Give a chair to that lady. - - - Let her not (come
*chaise*,f. *dame*,f. *mont-er*

up), for I am engaged. - - - - - Let us carry those
*car* *occupé*.

peaches to Mrs. D***. - - - Do not neglect your af-
*pêche*,f. *Mme*. *néglig-er* *af-*

fairs. - - - Let them hunt.
*faire*,f. *chasser*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. That I may help you. - - - Though† he do
*aid-er* *Quoique*

not approve of my plan. - - - Provided† we avoid
*approuv-er* *plan*,m. *Pourvu que* *évil-er*

their company. - - - That you may try that gun.
*compagnie*,f. *éprouv-er*

- - - That they may not command.

IMP. That I might change my opinion. - - - That
*chang-er* *d'opinion*,f.

he might eat an apple. - - - That we might not fall
*pomme*,f. *tomb-er*

into their hands. - - - That you might encourage the
*dans* *main*,f. *encourag-er*

industrious. - - - That they might exercise their tal-
*industrieux*. *exerc-er* *tal-*

---

* See Note, page 116.
† Conjunctions which require the subjunctive mood. See page 86 of the Grammar.

ents. - - - - That I might pronounce. - - - - That we
*ent*,m. *prononc-er.*
might begin.
*commenc-er.*

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES UPON THE COMPOUND TENSES.

I have forgotten to bring your penknife. - - - He
*oubli-er* *de* *canif*,m.
has not yet spoken to us. - - - Has she brought
*encore* *ơ*
her work with her ? Yes, she has.* - - - Have we
not gained our cause ? - - - Why have you not yet
*gagn-er*
begun your exercise ? - - - You had taken the
*commenc-er* *thème*,m. *emport-er*
mustard away. - - - You would have judged more
*moutarde*,f. *ơ* *jug-er*
favorably of him. - - - Stay here till †
*favorablement* *Rester* *ici* *jusqu'à ce que*
we have dined. - - They have broken all the panes
*din-er.* *cass-er* *carreau*,m.
of glass in their windows, because they had not il-
*vitre*,m. *de* *fenêtre*,f. *parceque* *il-*
luminated as it had been ordered. - - I shall have
*lumin-er* *comme* *ordonn-er.*
dined[2] soon. - - - We would have sent‡ them to
*bientôt.* *envoy-er* *en*
prison, if they had resisted. - - - That we may have
*prison*,f. *résist-er.*

---

* See Note, page 139.
† Conjunction requiring the subjunctive mood.
‡ See Rules for the agreement of the passive participles, Grammar, page 83.

denied the fact. - - - Had you not imitated their man-
*ni-er* *fait*,m. *imit-er* *ma-*
ners ? - - They had not executed his commands. - -
*nière*,f. *exécut-er* *commandement*,m.
Had I not lighted the fire ? - - - - They would have
*allum-er* *feu*,m.
carried him to the concert, if I had not hindered *
*empêch-er*
them (from it). - - - That we might have accepted of
*en* *accept-er* *of*
his offers.
*offre*,f.

---

## VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

GRAMMAR: PAGE 36.

**Read attentively the observations which follow this conjugation in the Grammar.**

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I always[2] finish[1] my work before the
*toujours* *fin-ir* *ouvrage*,m. *avant*
others. - - - - Your friend does not succeed in his
*ami*,m. *réuss-ir* *dans*
undertaking. - - - - - Do we not furnish arms against
*entreprise*,f. *fourn-ir* *arme*,f. *contre*
ourselves ? - - - Why do you hate him ? - - - They
*of* *ha-ïr*
cure the diseases of the body and not those of
*guér-ir* *maladie*,f. *corps*,m.
the mind.

---

* See Rules for the agreement of the passive participles, Grammar, page 83.

IMP. I was building my house when you were
*bât-ir* *maison*,f. *quand*
demolishing yours. - - - Was he not enjoying a good
*démol-ir* *jou-ir de* *beau*
estate ? - - - We hated him, because he did not act
*bien*,m. *parceque* *ag-ir*
kindly towards us. - - - On what were you re-
*honnêtement* *envers* *Sur* *ré-*
flecting ? - - - - The mountains were resounding with
*flech-ir ?* *montagne*,f. *retent-ir* *de*
their cries.
*cri*,m.

PRET. I warranted them very good. - - - - Did not
*garant-ir*
your master accomplish his promise ? - - - We (leap-
*accompl-ir* *promesse*,f. *fran-*
ed over) the ditch, and seized the guilty. - - - Why
*chir* *fossé*,m. *sais-ir* *coupable.*
did you not applaud that pretty actress ? - - - -
*applaud-ir à* *joli* *actrice*,f.
I did,* with all my might. - - - Did not the soldiers
*de* *forces*,f.pl. *soldat*,m.
obey the commands of their general ?
*obé-ir aux commandements*,m.

FUT. When shall I banish all these thoughts
*bann-ir* *tout* *pensée*,f.
from my mind ? - - - This plant will soon blossom,
*plante*,f. *fleur-ir*,
if you water it often. - - - We shall warn your
*arroser* *souvent.* *avert-ir*
relations of it. - - - Shall you not enjoy, as we
*parent*,m. *jou-ir* *comme*

---

* See Note, page 139.

do, the pure pleasures of the country ? - - - - Her
*de* *pur*
children will bless her for it.
*bén-ir*

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

I would choose this cloth, if I were in your place.
*chois-ir* *drap*,m. *à*
- - Would he not blush if he had acted so ? - - We
*roug-ir* *ainsi ?*
would not punish them, if they were diligent ? - - - -
Would you not act with less severity ? - - - They
*avec* *sévérité ?*
would furnish us with arms and troops if we want-
*de* *troupe*,f. *avoir*
ed any.
*besoin* *en.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Do not fill the glasses. - - - Let him enjoy the
*rempl-ir* *verre*,m. *du*
fruit of his labors. - - - Well ! let him enjoy it, I
*travail.* *Eh bien !* *en,*
do not hinder him from it. - - - Let us reflect on
*empêch-er* *à*
what we have to do. - - - Let them define the ques-
*à faire.* *défin-ir*
tion.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. That I may not perish. - - - I wish he
*pér-ir.* *souhait-er*
may succeed. - - - - - That we may not (bear hard-
*réuss-ir.* *pât-ir*

ships). - - - That you may not hate us. - - - Provided

they do not (grow tall).
*grand-ir.*

IMP. That I might refresh my memory. - - - -
*refraîch-ir* *mémoire*,f.

That she might not roast the meat. - - That we might
*ne fît pas rôt-ir*

(become younger). - - - - That you might punish the
*rajeun-ir.*

idle. - - - That they might not (grow old).
*vieill-ir.*

COMPOUND TENSES.

I have filled my cellar with good wine. - - - Has
*rempl-ir* *cave*,f. *de*

he not (leaped over) the ditch ? - - - We had finished

our work. - - - They would have seized him. - - - We
*ouvrage*,m.

should have perished without any assistance. - - - -
*sans aucun secours.*

When shall I have built my house ? - - - - - I have
*bât-ir*

(very much) weakened his courage. - - - Though they
*beaucoup* *affaibl-ir* *Quoique*

have adorned their gardens to dazzle the vulgar,
*aient* *embell-ir* *jardin*,m. *pour éblou-ir* *vulgaire*,m.

they have not succeeded, because they have disobey-
*réuss-ir,* *parceque* *désobé-*

ed their father and mother.
*ir* *à*

## VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

GRAMMAR: PAGE 39.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I entertain great hopes from his con-
*conc-evoir* *espérance*,f. *con-*

duct. - - - - - I (am to)* write to your brother to-
*duite*,f. *écrire*

morrow, to let him know that your father is
*pour faire lui savoir*

arrived. - - - A commander ought to be intrepid
*commandant*,m. *devrait*

in the midst of dangers. - - - He (is to) go and
*au milieu*,m. *aller* ∽

breakfast at my uncle's next[2] Sunday[1], and he (is
*déjeûner chez*

to) come and sup with us. - - - We sometimes en-
*venir* ∽ *souper* *quelquefois*

tertain a hatred for persons who deserve our friend-
*de la haine*,f. *mériter* *ami-*

ship. - - - Do you not perceive a mountain beyond
*tié*,f. *aperc-evoir* *derrière*

that tree? - - - Yes, I do.† - - - We (are to) remit
*remettre*

him the value in goods or in money. - -
*valeur*,f. *en marchandises*,f.pl.

---

* When the verb *to be to* is used in the present or imperfect tenses of the indicative mood, and precedes another verb in the infinitive mood, denoting a futurity in the action, it is to be rendered in French by the same tense of the verb *devoir*, and not by *être*;

| | |
|---|---|
| *Je* dois *aller au parc*; | I *am to* go to the park. |
| *Nous* devions *lui écrire*; | We *were to* write to him. |

† See Note, page 139.

Are you not to dine with my father and mother to-
*de-*
morrow ? --- Men commonly owe their virtues or
*main ?* *devoir*
their vices to education as much as to nature. ----
*autant* *que*
Are these young ladies to go to the ball ? --- No,
*aller* *bal*,m.
they are not.* --- A young man (ought to) love the
*y aller.* *devrait*
society of those who are the most learned and modest.
*société*,f.

IMP. I owed four guineas to your aunt when she died.
*guinée* *mourut.*
--- Was not your brother to receive that money last[2]
Thursday[1] ? --- We received his tiresome visits, be-
*Jeudi*,m. *ennuyant*
cause we were obliged to it. --- Were you not to
*obliger y.*
let[3] them[2] know[4] it[1] sooner ? --- They were not to
*faire* *savoir*
stay above six weeks.
*rester plus de*

PRET. I received yesterday, with (a great deal) of
*bien*
pleasure, the books you sent me. --- As soon as
*envoyer*
we perceived the danger, we warned him of it. ---
*aperc-evoir* *avertir*
They heard† yesterday from your brother.

---

* See Note, page 139.

† The expression, *hear from*, must be translated into French by *recevoir des nouvelles de*, to receive news of, or by *recevoir de ses* (or *de leurs*) *nouvelles ;* as,

FUT. I shall entertain a bad opinion of you,
*conc-evoir* *mauvais* f.
if you do not avoid Mr. R****'s* company. - - - We
*éviter*
shall owe him nothing[2] more[1], after this month. - - -
*après*
I hope that you will receive all my letters during my
*pendant*
absence, and that they will hear† from their father
(in a short time).
*dans peu.*

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

I should answer your brother's* letter, but I
*répondre à*
have not time. - - - Should‡ not your sister give
*le temps*,m. *rendre à*

---

J'ai *reçu des nouvelles de* son père; *I have heard from his father.*
J'ai *reçu de ses* (de leurs) nouvelles; *I have heard from him (from them).*

* See Note, page 111.

† See preceding page, Note †.

‡ When the word *should* expresses a duty or necessity, or can with propriety be turned into *ought to*, it is rendered in French by the conditional present of the verb *devoir*; ex.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Je* devrais *aller le voir;* | I *should* or *ought to* go and see him. |
| *Vous* devriez *le secourir dans sa misère, etc.;* | You *should* or *ought to* help him in his misery, etc. |

The word *should*, or *ought*, when joined to the verb *to have*, immediately followed by a participle passive, must be rendered by the conditional past of the above verb, with the participle passive turned into the present of the infinitive mood; ex.

| | |
|---|---|
| *J'aurais dû l'obliger à rester ici;* | I *should* or *ought to have* obliged him to stay here. |
| *Nous* aurions dû *revenir plutôt;* | We *should* or *ought to have* come back sooner. |

In the negative, *Je n'aurais pas dû l'obliger*, etc.

your[2] mother[3] (an account)[1] of all her actions ? - - - -
*compte*

She would soon perceive the danger, if she knew
*bientôt* *savait*

the consequences of it. - - - Children should every day

learn something by heart. - - - - You should not
*apprendre* *cœur*,m.

despise the advice that he gives you. - - - Should
*mépriser* *avis*,m.

they, after what they have done, expect to re-
*après* *fait*, *s'attendre à*

ceive favors ? - - - Grammar, geography, history, mu-

sic, are sciences and arts which ladies should never

neglect.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Receive this small present, as a token of my
*marque*,f.

friendship.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. *and* IMP. Though I perceive ships
*Quoique* *vaisseau*,m.

(afar off), I cannot distinguish them. - - He wrote
*de loin* *ne saurais* *écrivit*

to us by the first post, so that we might re-
*afin que*

ceive his orders (in proper time).
*à temps.*

COMPOUND TENSES.

I have not yet received his answer. --- You
*encore* *réponse*,f.

should have been making your theme this morning in-
*matin*,m. *au*

stead of playing. --- He has entertained the hope of
*lieu* *jouer.*

living here all his life. --- She ought to have thank-
*vivre* *ici* *vie*,f. *remer-*

ed him for the good advice which he gave her. --
*cier* *de*

When did you hear from your sister? We have

not heard from her since her departure. ----- Your
*depuis* *départ*,m.

uncle should not have obliged him to pay half
*oncle*,m. *à* *moitié*,f.

the expenses. --- We should have owed him one
*des* *frais*,m. *on*

hundred livres. --- I beg[2] your[1] pardon, I ought
*livre*,f. *demander* *vous*

not to have made you wait so long. --- Ought
*faire* *attendre* *long-temps.*

not we to have employed our time better than (we
*employer* *nous*

did)? ------ You ought to have been less presump-
*n'avons fait?* *présomp-*

tuous.
*tueux.*

## VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

GRAMMAR: PAGE 41.

**Read attentively the observations which follow this conjugation in the Grammar.**

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I do not mean to wrong him. - - -
*prétend-re* *faire tort* *lui.*

Is your mother (coming down) ? - - - We expect our
*descend-re ?* *attend-re*

friend, Mr. A***. - - - Do not you forbid her to
*défend-re* *de*

go there ? - - - They sell bad fruit.
*aller* *mauvais*

IMP. Did I not interrupt him while he
*interromp-re* *pendant que*

was answering them ? - - - She was melting into tears
*répond-re* *leur ?* *fond-re* *en larme*,f.

when you arrived. - - Were we not losing our time ?
*arrivâtes.* *perdre* *temps*,m.

- - - You were not spreading your nets. - - - Did they
*étend-re* *filet*,m.

corrupt our manners ?
*corromp-re* *mœurs*,f.pl.

PRET. (As soon as) I had received my money, I
*Dès que*

returned them what they had lent me. - - - Did
*rend-re* *ce que* *prêter*

he not hear you ? - - - We (waited for) them a
*entend-re* *attend-re*

month. - - - (For how much) did he sell it to them ?
*mois*,m. *Combien*

- - - They spilled all the wine.
*répand-re*

FUT. I shall shear my flock (in the) month
*tond-re* *troupeau*,m. *au*

of May. - - - - If you do not take care, the dog
*Mai.* *prenez garde,*

will bite you. - - - Shall we not lose, if we play ?
*mord-re*

- - - You will melt it, if you put it into the fire.
*fond-re* *mettez dans*

- - - No, I will not. - - - They[1] shall[3] not[2] hear[3] ([5])
*entend-re par-*

of[6] me[7] (any more)[4].
*ler* *plus.*

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Should I not do him the justice he deserves ?
*rend-re* *mériter ?*

- - - Would he not interrupt you ? - - - We would

defend them if we could. - - - Why would you not
*défend-re* *pouvions.*

answer, if I were speaking to you ? - - - - Your
*répond-re,*

hens would (lay eggs) every day, if they were not
*poule*,f. *pond-re*

so fat.
*gras.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Give[1] God[3] thanks[2]. - - Let her not come down.
*Rend-re* *Dieu* *grâce à*

- - Let us (give in) our accounts faithfully. - - - Do
*rend-re* *compte*,m. *fidèlement.*

not lose my book. - - - Let them hear the voice of the
*voix*,f.

Lord.
*Seigneur*,m.

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. *and* IMP. Speak loud, that I may hear what
*haut,*

you say. - - - - - She plays (upon the) harpsichord,
*dites.* *du* *clavecin*,m.

though you forbid her to do it. - - - He wrote to
*quoique* *lui* *de* *faire* *écrivit*

us, that we might not expect him.

### COMPOUND TENSES.

I have lost my book ; have you found it ? - -
*perd-re* *trouver*

She has broken her fan. - - - - Have you not inter
*romp-re* *éventail*,m.

rupted me several times ? - - - I had not then an
*alors*

swered his letter. - - - If they (had gone) there,
*à* *étaient* *allés*

would they not have lost their time ? Yes, they would

- - He says he would have sold us very good wine. -
*dit*

Had you not forbidden her to speak ? - - - That they
*de*

might have (waited for) us.

## PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

GRAMMAR: PAGE 48.

Your uncle has acquired a great name in America.
*nom*,m.

--- My father went to pay your[2] uncle[3] a vis-
*rendre à*

it[1] last[5] week[4], and he did not welcome him (as a)
*en*

friend. --- Where are you going ? --- I am going
*Où*

to the play. -- I would go with you, if I had time.
*comédie*,f. *le*

--- Why are they going away so soon ? --- Will

not your father be angry, if you go there without
*fâché*,

him ? --- Believe me, sir, do not go to see them.
*Croire* *voir*

--- He has been beaten (soundly). --- If you knew
*comme il faut.*

the question, you would resolve it in two words. --
*question*,f. *mots*,m.

I will soon conclude, if you think as your brother
*comme*

does. --- We should beat them, if they did not fight

in their own country. ----- Do not beat him any
*propre*

more ; he acknowledges his fault. --- What will you
*faute*,f.

drink ? --- I will drink (nothing but) water. -- Do
*ne* *que*

not drink so much. --- If your father were here, you
*tant.*

would not drink (at all). - - - Let us fill our glasses,
*du tout.* *verre*,m.
and drink to our friend's health. - - - * Boil this chick-
*santé*,f. *pou-*
en, and roast * that goose. - - - At last we have
*let*,m. *rôtir* *oie*,f. *Enfin*
conquered. - - - This water will soon boil. - - - Boil
*bientôt*
that meat again ; it is not done enough.
*cuit*

The enemy beat us on the eighteenth, but we beat them again two days after. - - - What will you drink, ladies ? - - - We shall willingly drink some
*Mesdames*,f. *volontiers*
wine ; for we have not drunk any since our de-
*en* *depuis* *dé-*
parture from France. - - - Drink, said she to me, (out
*part*,m. *dans*
of) that cup, the only token which your father
*coupe*,f. *seul* *marque*,f.
has left us of his love. - - - Virtue in indigence is
*ait* *laissir* *affection*,f. *dans*
like a traveller whom the wind and rain com-
*comme* *pluie*,f. *con-*
pel to wrap himself up in his cloak. - - - I
*traindre* *de* *envelopper* *se* *de* *manteau*,m.
would have preserved some fruits this year, but sugar

---

* *Bouillir* and *Rôtir* are used actively with the verb *Faire ;* as,

| | |
|---|---|
| Faites bouillir cette viande ; | *Boil this meat.* |
| Faites rôtir cette viande ; | *Roast this meat.* |

is too dear. - - - Thence we concluded* you could
*trop* *De là*
not come to-day. - - - I know nobody in this neigh-
*voisin-*
bourhood. - - Your brother's coat was torn, but our
*age*,m. *déchirer*
tailor sewed it up again so skilfully, that his
*tailleur*,m. *adroitement*,
father did not perceive it. - - - Unsew that gown. - - -
I will sew it to-morrow. - - - The Jews and the Ma-
*Juif*,m. *Ma-*
hometans circumcise their children a few days after
*hométan*,m. *peu*
their birth. - - - Why do not you preserve some
*naissance*,f.
fruits this year ? - - - He would not know you, if he
*année*,f.
saw you now. - - - - Your brother runs faster than I.
*à présent.*
- - - When he heard that his friend was in danger, he
*apprit* *était*
ran instantly to him. - - - - Let us not discourse any
*aussitôt* *à*
more on that subject. - - - I would assist him with all
*sujet*,m. *de*
my heart, if I could. - - - This gentleman is a great
*pouvais.* *Monsieur*
traveller ; he has run over all Europe. - - - Let
*voyageur*,m. *Europe*,f.
him go away, for I do not wish to speak to him.
*car* *veux*
- - - If you do it, you will incur your father's dis-
*faire* *dé-*

* See Note, page 140.

pleasure. - - - That would concur to the public good.
*plaisir*,m. *Cela* *bien*,m.

- - - Do not fear to tell her what you think of it. - -
*de* *lui* *penser*

I will speak to her to oblige you, but I know she
*pour*

does not fear me. - - - Why do you not believe me ?

- - - They (are afraid) of being exposed to some dan-
*être*

gers. - - We would not believe him, though he should
*quand*

tell the truth. - - - For whom are you gathering those
*vérité*,f. *Pour qui*

charming flowers ? - - I gather them for my mother. - -
*fleur*,f.

Why do they not gather some roses ? - - - Were I in
*rose*,f.

town, I would tell them all that I think (about it).
*penser* *en*

- - - Say nothing to her, believe me. - - - I will tell
*ne rien*

it to you to-morrow. - - - I esteem your daughter
*estimer*

much, because she told me sincerely that she would

do neither. - - - They who say all they know, will
*tout ce qu'ils*

readily say what they do not know. - - - We were
*volontiers*

writing while they slept. - - - - If your brother
*pendant que*

come here, detain him, and tell him that I have

something to show him. - - - - The last time they
*à faire voir*

wrote to him, they desired him to send them the in-
*prier* *de* *leur* *fac-*

voice of the goods, and he has still omitted
*ture*,f. *marchandises*, *encore*

it in his letter. - - - What are you doing now ? - - - -
*maintenant ?*

I am making a cap for your sister. - - Do not that, I

will do it myself. - - - - - I would do it with all my
*de*

heart, if I could. - - - What would you have done,

if you had been in my place ? - - - Why do you not
*si* *à*

fry that fish ? - - - The first time you come to
*fois*,f, (*by the fut.*)

see me, I will show you some flowers. - - - As soon
*ferai voir* *Aussitôt*

as they saw us coming, they ran away. - - - - Avoid
*que* *voir* *venir*,

bad company. - - - If you forgive me this time, I nev-
*compagnie*,f. *fois*,f.

er will lie any more. - - - I cannot believe him ; for
*ne* *pouvoir*

he contradicts himself every instant. - - - She reads
*à tout* *moment*,m.

every day from three o'clock till five. - - - I will
*depuis* *heure* *jusqu'à*

read your letter as soon as I am dressed. - - - The in-
(*by the fut.*) *habillé.*

habitants of W*** have elected Mr. V. W. for their

representative in Congress. - - - I was reading Mar-
*représentant*,m. *au*

montel's Tales when you came in. - - - I would put
*Conte*,m. *entrer*

all your china in that closet, if I had the
*porcelaine*,f. *cabinet*,m.

key of it. - - - He promised to pay me the tenth of
*de*

this month, but he has now put me off to the third

of December. - - - - He submitted (to it) with the
*se soumettre* *y*

greatest patience. - - - You promise enough, but you

seldom keep your word.
*rarement* *tenir*

Before the invention of water-mills and wind-mills
*Avant*

the ancients used to grind their corn in
*avoir coutume de* *grain*,m. *dans*

mortars. - - - Put these books in their places again. - -
*mortier*,m.

I believe * he did it through spite. - - - Shall I put
*par* *dépit*,m.

another trimming upon your gown ? - - - Let us die
*garniture*,f. *robe ?*

for our country, and our death will be glorious. - - - -
*patrie*,f. *glorieux.*

The children who (shall be born) from this happy

marriage, will be the delight of their father and
*délices*,f.pl.

mother. - - - When you see Mrs. B., I am certain
(*by the fut.*) *sûr*

she will please you. - - - You may set out when (you
*il vous*

please) ; we will follow you. - - - - - My brother (was
*plaira ;*

born) in Paris, on the eighth of February, one thou-
*à* *Février*,m.

---

* See Note, page 140.

sand seven hundred and eighty-one. - - - - - You can
ơ
speak to Mr. B. whenever you please, but I can-
*parlez* *quand* *vouloir*,
not take that liberty. - - - Why can you not ? - - -
*prendre* ơ ơ
If you want that book, you may take it,
*avoir besoin de*
it is at your service. - - - Virtue is a quality which
*à*
we cannot (too much) praise. - - - Severity and rig-
*on* *trop louer.* *Sévérité*,f. *ri-*
or may excite fear but not love. - - - Do not
*gueur*,f. *crainte*,f. *amour*,m.
undertake to undeceive her ; believe me, you will
*détromper*
lose your time. - - - We often mistake when we
*se méprendre*
judge from appearances ; and often a person dis-
*juger*
pleases us by the very quality by which another has
*même*
pleased us. - - - That man will bless you, if you (give
*bénir*
him other clothes). - - - We laughed much yesterday
*le revêtir*
at the play. - - - She was an agreeable lady ; she was
*comédie*,f.
ever smiling when any one had the honor of speaking
*toujours*
to her. - - When you know your lesson, come and re-
(*by the fut.*) ơ *ré-*
peat it to me. - - - Did you know that Mr. A. (was to*)
*péter*

---

* See Note *, page 147.

marry Miss B. ? - - - I knew it, but I was not wil-
*épouser* *mais*

ling to tell your brother of it. - - - We would serve
*parler*

him with all our hearts, if we could. - - - I shall go
*de* *pouvoir.*

out in half an hour. - - - If we go to-day to
*aujourd'hui*

Richmond, we will (make use of) your coach. - - - -
*se servir de* *carrosse*,m.

Your friend, Mr. H***, does not serve me well. - - -
*ami*,m. *ℴ*

Shall I help you to a little bit of lamb, or
*servir* *ℴ* *morceau*,m. *agneau*,m.

a wing of that chicken ? - - - Why do you not
*aile*,f. *poulet*,m. *Pourquoi*

serve your friends, since you can do it ? - - - If
*puisque*

we go to my brother's, shall you be able to follow
*chez* *ℴ*

us ? - - - I will follow you step by step. - - - Why do
*pas à pas.*

you follow me ? - - - You know the esteem and friend-
*estime*,f.

ship that I have for him ; you know that his father

is one of my oldest friends. - - - - Your illness pro-
*ancien*

ceeds from a great heat. - - - The first time that you
*chaleur*,f.

come to see me, I will keep you two or three
(*by the fut.*) *ℴ* *tenir*

days. - - - Mr B. desired me to tell you, that he will
*prier* *de*

not come back to-day. - - - - - Her mother started at
*à*

these words, and became furious. - - - Come on Fri-
*parole*,f. *furieux*. *ce* *Ven-*

day morning at nine o'clock. - - - As long as her
*dredi*,m. *Tant* *que*

father and mother live, they never will consent to
(*by the fut.*)

her marriage with Mr. R. - - - You will not live long,

if you drink so much. - - - She lived about four years
*environ*

after her husband's death. - - This cloth is not worth
*après* *drap*,m.

five shillings a* yard, but the color becomes you very

well. - - - Do you not see the defects of it ? - - - - I
*défaut*,m.

will not see (any more) your brother, but I will see you
*plus*

again as soon as I can. - - - - - (It is) better (to
(*by the fut.*) *Il vaut* *mal-*

be unfortunate) than criminal. - - - - His best coat
*heureux* *habit*,m.

was not worth two-pence when he arrived from Ger-
*sou*,m. *Alle-*

many. - - - We saw them yesterday. - - - They did not
*magne.* *hier.*

foresee what would happen to them.

---

* The English article *a* or *an*, before nouns of measure, weight, and number, must be rendered in French by the definite articles *le, la, les.*

## EXERCISES ON THE REFLECTED VERBS.

GRAMMAR: PAGE 77.

The verbs marked thus, *, are irregular: see the vocabulary of irregular verbs alphabetically arranged: Grammar, page 48.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I rise (early) every morning. - -
*se lever de bonne heure tous les matin*,m.pl.

Does not your brother remember to have seen
*se ressouvenir** *de* *vu*

me? - - - My sister† is not well; she applies
*sœur*,f. *se porter* *s'appliquer*

herself (too much) to study. - - - We rejoice at the
*trop* *se réjouir* *de*

good news which he has brought us. - - - - - When
*nouvelle* *apporté*

do you intend to go and see Mrs. H.? - - - -
*se proposer* *de aller* *& voir*

Do you not repent what you have done to
*se repentir** *de* *fait*

her? - - - I believe ‡your brothers are not well; for
*croire* *car*

I have not seen them this week.
*vu* *semaine*,f.

IMP. I was riding on horseback in the park
*se promener* *parc*,m.

---

† When we mean to express the state of a person's health, instead of the verb *être*, we must use the reflected verb *se porter*;

*Ma sœur ne* se porte *pas bien*; \ My sister *is* not well.

‡ The conjunction *that*, though sometimes omitted in English, must always be expressed in French.

when I met him. - - - Was he not warming him-
*quand* *rencontrer* *se chauffer*

self when you (came in) ? - - - We did not imagine
*entrer ?* *s'imaginer*

he would succeed so well. - - - You were boasting
*réussir* *se vanter*

(too much) of what you have done for him. - - They
*trop* *fait*

did not expect that they should meet us.
*s'attendre à* ص ص

PRET. I inquired after you yesterday. - - - Did
*s'informer de* *hier.*

not my son behave well in the last war ? - - -
*se comporter* *dernier guerre,f.*

Corn was sold yesterday for twelve shillings a † bush-
*se vendre* ص

el. - - - - - We saw ourselves surrounded by more than
*se voir* * *entouré* *de*

twenty persons in an instant. - - - Did you not find
*se trouver*

yourselves obliged to go there ? - - - - They did not
*obligé de aller*

stop one minute.
*s'arrêter*

FUT. I will not complain of you, if you prom-
*se plaindre* *pro-*

ise me to behave better. - - - Will your bird
*mettre* * *de* *mieux.* *oiseau,*m.

(grow tame) ? - - - - - Shall we submit ourselves to
*s'apprivoiser ?* *se soumettre* *

his judgment ? - - - - You will ruin yourselves if you
*jugement,*m. *se ruiner*

---

† See Note, page 163.

continue (gaming). - - - Will they not perceive it
*continuer de jouer.* *s'apercevoir en*
(as soon as) they come into the room ?
*dès que* *entrer*, fut.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

If I were in your place, I would not vex myself.
*étais à* *se chagriner.*
- - Would she not (make her escape) ? - - We would
*s'échapper ?*
embark (this day), if the weather (permitted). - -
*s'embarquer aujourd'hui,* *temps*, m. *le permettait.*
Would you embark so soon ? - - - - Why would you
expose yourselves to their fury ? - - - - They would
*s'exposer* *fureur*, f.
agree very well, if they were not so proud.
*s'accorder* *bien* *orgueilleux.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

I give you leave to go out, but do not
*donner* *permission de sortir, mais*
overheat † yourself. - - - - - Let him amuse himself a
*s'échauffer.* *s'amuser*
little in my garden. - - - Let us remember what
*un peu* *jardin*, m. *se ressouvenir de**
we are to do. - - - Endeavour to please your master,
‡ *faire.* *S'efforcer de plaire* *maître*, m.
and do not so often mistake † in the tenses, numbers,
*se tromper* *temps,*
and persons of the verb. - - - Let them (fall asleep).
*s'endormir **.

† When the verb is conjugated with a *negation*, the pronouns are put before the verb; ex. *ne* vous *promenez pas*, do not walk; and *toi* is changed into *te*: *ne* te *promène pas.*

‡ See Note, page 147.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. I must apply myself to the French
*Il faut que† s'applique*
language. - - - I will hide it, lest she should
*langue*,f. *cacher de peur que ne*
perceive it. - - - Provided we remember to ask
*s'apercevoir en. Pourvû que de de-*
him how his[2] mother[3] does[1]. - - - (In order
*mander lui comment se porte. Afin*
that) you may not boast (so much). - - - - I have
*que se vanter tant.*
told them who you are, that they may behave bet-
*dit afin que*
ter another time.
*fois*,f.

IMP. That I might not ruin myself. - - - - - That
*se ruiner.*
he might not meddle with my affairs. - - - That we
*se mêler de*
might excuse ourselves. - - - - That you might not
*s'excuser*
go away. - - - - That they might not repent too
*s'en aller.** *se repentir* trop*
late.
*tard.*

COMPOUND TENSES.

The Reflected Verbs are conjugated in their compound tenses with the verb *être*. See Grammar, page 77.

I have inquired after you and your sister. - - - He
*s'informer de*

† The impersonal verb, *il faut*, requires the subjunctive mood after it.

says you were not† well while you were in
*dit vous ne vous êtes pas pendant que à*

the country. - - - Has not your cousin laughed at
*campagne*,f. *cousin*,m. *se moquer de*

me ? - - - Did we not get up at six (o'clock) ? - - -
*se lever à heure*,f.

They have perceived the trick, but it was too late.
*du tour*,m. *ce*

- - Did you remember me ? - - - - I had not
*se ressouvenir* de*

applied myself enough. - - - - - Had not your sister
*s'appliquer assez.*

imagined that they would have found themselves
*s'imaginer se trouver*

obliged to go to‡ France ? - - - He has wounded him-
*obligé de se blesser*

self in attempting to injure me. - - - We had thought
*essayer de nuire se croire**

ourselves able to resist them, but we have (been
*capable de résister leur, mais se*

deceived). - - - Did you not hide yourselves (in order)
*tromper.* *se cacher afin*

to surprise them ? - - - When I (shall) have walked
*de surprendre Quand*

five or six minutes in the garden, I will rest myself.
*minute*,f. *jardin*,m. *se reposer.*

- - Why did you exhaust yourself as you have done ?
*s'épuiser fait ?*

- - Our sailors would have behaved with more res-
*matelot*,m.

olution. - - - - Would you not have excused yourself ?
*s'excuser*

---

† See Note †, page 164.
‡ See Grammar, page 6, Note : *Exceptions* to rule 3.

--- When they have repented their faults, I
(*fut.*) *se repentir* de*
will forgive them. --- If I had been in your place,
*avais* *à*
I would not have meddled with their affairs. --- Your
*se mêler* *de*
friend would not have complained of you, and you
*se plaindre**
never would have (fallen out) for so small a matter.
*se brouiller* *si peu de chose.*

---

## EXERCISES ON THE IMPERSONAL VERBS.

GRAMMAR: PAGE 79.

Does it rain ? --- It rained just now, but
*tout-à-l'heure,*
it does not rain at present. ---- Was it not raining
*maintenant.*
when you came ? --- I advise you not to go out
*conseiller* *de ne pas*
this morning ; I think it will soon rain. --- I am
*bientôt*
sure it would rain, if the [6]wind was[2] [1]not[3] so[4] high[5].
*s'il* *faire* *grand.*
----- Do you know what happened to my cousin
*savoir* *est arrivé*
whilst he was in town ? ----- I foresaw what
*pendant que* *en* *prévoir*
would happen. --- The roads were very slippery
*chemin*,m. *glissant*
yesterday, because it drizzled the whole day. --- Did

you observe how it lightened last night ? - - - If
*remarquer* *comme* *passée*
it did not freeze, I would go to see them to-day. - -
*ne voir*
It hailed this afternoon, and it will certainly snow to-
*après-midi*,m. *cette*
night. - - - It thundered much yesterday, and I think
*nuit*,f. *beaucoup* *croire*
it will thunder again to-day. - - - - It matters little
*encore* *importe*
whether you write your exercise now or later, pro-
*que* (subj.) *thème* *pour-*
vided it be well written.
*vu que*

---

EXERCISE ON THE VERB Y AVOIR.

GRAMMAR : PAGE 80. NOTE.

There are three ladies who (are waiting for) you in
*attendre*
your brother's study. - - Is there any fire in the parlour ?
*cabinet*,m. *salle*,f.
- - - No, Sir, there is none. - - - There were two men
*il n'y en a pas.*
below who asked to speak to you. - - Was there not
*en bas* *à*
formerly a (coffee-house) at the corner of this street ?
*autrefois* *café*,m. *coin*,m. *rue*,f.
- - - There were great rejoicings in France when
*réjouissance*,f.
peace was proclaimed. - - - - - I was telling you, that
*proclamée.* *dire*

there will be a grand concert, and afterwards a ball
*ensuite*

and supper in the course of this month. - - There
*courant*,m.

would be no harm, if you would learn[1] your[3] lesson
*mal*,m.

better[2]. - - - - My brother says that there has been a
*mieux.*

bloody engagement between an English frigate, and
*sanglant* *combat*,m. *frégate*,f.

a French one, and there have been many men
*frégate*,f. *de*

killed on both sides. - - - There would have been a
*de part et d'autre.*

great riot yesterday in the street, if the magis-
*émeute*,f.

trates had not sent many constables, who dispersed
*connetables*,m.

the mob.
*populace*,f.

---

EXERCISES ON THE IMPERSONAL VERB C'EST.

GRAMMAR : PAGE 80. NOTE.

It is prosperity which commonly[2] makes[1] men
*prospérité*,f. *rendre*

haughty and proud, but it is adversity that makes
*fier* *orgueilleux*, *rendre*

them wise. - - - It was the custom among the Spar-
*coutume*,f. *chez* *Spar-*

tans to inure their children early to
*tiate*,m. *de* *endurcir* *de bonne heure*

the fatigues of war. - - - It is not I* who occasioned
*travail*,m. *guerre*,f. *causer*

the quarrel, it is you who began first. - - -
*querelle*,f. *avez commencé le*

It was envy which caused the first murder. - - - Is
*envie*,f. *meurtre*,m.

it not you who wrote to Miss A. ? No, it is Miss
*avez écrit*

Rose's † sister. - - - - - If you do not succeed, it will
*réussir*,

not be my fault. - - - If you happened to lose the
*faute*,f. *venir* *à* *perdre*

friendship of your parents, it would be the great-

est misfortune which ever could happen to you.
*malheur*,m. *jamais* *pouvoir* *arriver*

- - - - It is my friend who told me that it was your
*dire*

father whom we saw yesterday. - - - - - Speak to my

brothers, for it is they who told it to me. - - - Why
*Pourquoi*

do you not accuse my sisters ? - - - It is they who

have done all the mischief. - - - You blame my aunts,
*mal*,m. *blâmer* *tante*,f.

but is it they who have offended you ?
*offenser*

---

* See Note, page 14. † See Note, page 111.

EXERCISES ON THE IMPERSONAL VERB IL EST.

GRAMMAR: PAGE 80. NOTE.

It is surprising to see you so lazy and inattentive,
*étonnant de*

after having been punished severely for these
*après avoir* *sevèrement*

faults. - - - - It is always dangerous to (keep company
*de fréquenter*

with) people without any principle of religion. - -
*personne* *aucun* *principe*,m.

Does it rain ? No, Sir, it is fine weather.
*Monsieur*,m.

- - - Was it not very cold ? - - - It will neither be
*froid*,m. *ni*

cold nor hot. - - - There has (been a) high wind, and
*ni* *faire* *grand*

I think it will soon freeze. - - - It is not so cold as
*penser*

it was (at the) beginning of this month. - - - Do
*au* *commencement*,m.

you think that it is hotter in Italy than here?
(*subj.*)

---

## EXERCISES ON THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

AGREEMENT OF THE PAST PARTICIPLE WITH ITS NOMINATIVE.

GRAMMAR: PAGE 82.

(I have been told) that your brother-in-law is gone
*On m'a dit* *beau-frère*,m.

to the continent. - - - - I have not seen your mother
*vu*

since she arrived from France ; does she appear
*depuis que*

satisfied with her journey ? -- My brothers are gone to
*de. voyage*,m.

Dover, and intend to pay you a visit when
*se proposer de rendre*

they are (come back). ----- The houses which are
(*by the fut.*) *revenir.*

built in the winter are not so healthy as those which
*sain*

are begun (in the) spring and finished (in the) mid-
*au* *au*

dle of summer. --- The wicked are always tormented,
*été*,m. *méchant* *bourreler*,

and the righteous are comforted by their own con-
*juste* *consoler* *propre*

science. --- Virtuous people are esteemed and re-
*personne*,f.

spected by those who are so. --- I assure you that
*de* *le.**

Mr. Brown's wife appears much afflicted at the death of
*femme* *fort* *de*

her husband, but her sons appear as much affected
*mari*,m. *toucher*

as she.

---

AGREEMENT OF THE PAST PARTICIPLE WITH ITS REGIMEN.

GRAMMAR : PAGE 83.

The resolution which she has taken, of going into
*à*

the country, surprises me very much ; I have spoken
*étonner*

---

* See Remark 2, page 90.

to her myself, but I have not (been able to) learn
*pourvoir*
the reasons which have induced her to it. - - - Miss
*engager* *Mlle.*
Farren was an excellent actress ; I have seen her
*actrice*,f.
play several times. - - - - - I am very sorry for the
*fâché de*
trouble that affair has given to your aunt. - - - If you
*peine*,f. *tante*,f.
can come with me, I will show you the lady whom
*montrer*
I have heard sing. - - - - - What stuff have you
*entendre* *étoffe*,f.
chosen ? - - - The letter which you have written to me
*choisi ?*
in French is tolerably well ; I have shown it to
*en* *passablement*
your aunt, who is much pleased (with it). - - - I have
*très content en.*
not yet received the goods, which you sent me
*marchandise*,f.
by the ship Goodwill. - - - Ladies, have you
*vaisseau*,m. *Mesdames,*
returned him the letters which he desired you to read ?
*rendre* *prier de*
- - Where did you buy those gloves ? - - I bought
*Où* *acheter*
them in France. - - - Alexander conquered Asia with
*Asie*,f.
the troops which his father Philip had disciplined. - -
*troupe*,f.
The faults which he had committed greatly increased
*beaucoup augmenter*
his prudence. - - He has spent all his treasures which
*trésor*,m.

his father had amassed with so much care and labor.

--- I shall never forget the good services which you
*oublier* *service*,m.

have done to my mother. -- Of all the letters which
*rendre*

my brother has received to-day, there is not one
*aujourd'hui*,

(of them) for me. ---- The reasons, which you have

given us, have satisfied us. --- What books have you
*satisfaire*

lost ? --- The fine actions your brothers have done
*beau action*,f. *faire*

in America, deserve great praises, and (ought to)
*en Amérique*,f. *mériter* *louange*,f. *devoir*

be transmitted to posterity. ----- The three country

houses, which[1] your[3] father[4] (is said to[2]) have[5] bought,
*maison*,f. *on dit que*

are extremely fine and well situated. --- The soldiers,
*situé*. *soldat*,m.

whom they obliged to (set out), are (come back) al-
*à* *revenir*

ready. --- My sisters have quarrelled the whole day,
*se quereller*

and are now reconciled.

---

### PAST PARTICIPLES, DECLINABLE AND INDECLINABLE.

GRAMMAR: PAGE 84, SECOND RULE: PAGE 84, REMARK.

I have given him a fable to translate. --- I cannot
*à traduire.*

forget the good actions, which I have seen you do.

--- The goods which you ordered me to send, are
*de*

arrived ; permit me to show you the letters which he
*de*

has seen me open from Germany. --- Have you al-
*Allemagne*,f.

ready read the books which I saw * you buying ?
(*inf.*)

-- I have bought the clothes for which you saw me
*habit*,m.

bargaining. --- The history which I have begun to
*marchander.* *à*

read is not entertaining. ---- She has written more
*amusant.*

books than you have ever read. -- The lady whom
*en jamais*

I saw singing is handsome and young, but the song

which I heard sung is the best, as to words and
(*inf.*) *quant*

music, that your brother ever wrote. --- Miss B. has
*ait*

spent two or three days with your sisters, and saw
*passer* *voir*

their (portraits painted) ; their cousins were in the
*les* *peindre ;*

next room, and my sister saw them painting in miniature.

---

* Observe that the participle, though it does not agree with books, *livres*, should agree with the pronoun *vous*, and therefore should be written *vue*, if addressed to a female.

## RULES

### FOR THE EMPLOYMENT OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: WITH EXERCISES.

I. All verbs which express

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *contradiction,* | *hindrance,* | *command,* |
| *doubt,* | *consent,* | *prohibition,* |
| *expectation,* | *will,* | *fear,* or *apprehension,* |

require that the verb in the subordinate or consecutive part of the sentence should be put in the subjunctive.

#### EXERCISE.

I deny that you have arrived first. - - - - I doubt
*nier* *être* *le premier.* *douter*

whether that be true. - - - - I expect that he (will)
*que* *attendre* *ø*

come to see me. - - - The rain prevented people from
*ø* *empêcher* *qu'on*

going* to walk. - - - - I wonder that she has gone
*ne aller* *se promener.* *s'etonner* *être partie*

without me. - - - I permit you to go and see him. - -
*sans* *permettre* *que vous* *ø*

I consent that you buy that book. - - - - I will, I
*consentir* *acheter* *vouloir,*

---

* In order to determine in which tense of the subjunctive to put the verb, see Rules, page 94.

It should be remarked, however, that although the first verb is in the present tense, you may put the second in the imperfect or the pluperfect of the subjunctive, when you wish to place in the sentence a conditional expression; as,

Je *doute* que votre frère *eût réussi* sans votre secours; — *I doubt whether your brother would have succeeded without your assistance.*

order that you buy that hat. - - - - I forbid him
*ordonner* *défendre qu'il*

to go out of the house. - - I desired that he would
*de sortir* *désirer* *de*

give me a book. - - I tremble, I apprehend, I fear,
*trembler, appréhender, craindre,*

I am afraid that she may be displeased with my work.
*avoir peur* *ne mécontent de*

II. The verb *être*, to be, followed by an adjective or a participle, which expresses an emotion of the mind, such as *joy, discontent, indignation*, etc. requires the subjunctive after it.

EXERCISE.

I am very glad that you have heard* from him. - -
*aise* *reçu*

I am satisfied that you have followed my counsels. - -
*satisfait* *suivre* *conseils.*

I am content that your sister is gone. - - - - - I was
*sœur* *partie.*

sorry that you were sick. - - - I am (full of indigna-
*fâché* *malade.* *indigné*

tion) that my friend has behaved[3] so[1] badly[2].
*s'être comporté*

III. Verbs used negatively or interrogatively require the subjunctive after them. Gram. p. 28, rule 2. Sometimes, however, the interrogative form of the verb is used in order to affirm or deny with more force. In some cases the interrogation is not followed by the subjunctive mood, because it is used to communicate our sentiments to others without implying doubt ; as,

---

* See Note †, page 148.

Madame, oubliez-vous
Que Thésée est mon père, et qu'il est votre époux ?

Croirai-je qu'une nuit vous a pu ébranler ?

Croiras-tu, que toujours ferme au bord du précipice,
Elle pourra marcher, sans que le pied lui glisse ?

IV. *Impersonal Verbs*, and all verbs used impersonally, require the subjunctive mood after them.

Exceptions. Except the verbs *Il s'ensuit*, it follows ; *il résulte*, it results ; *il arrive*, it happens ; and those composed of a verb and an adjective expressing a positive affirmation ; such as *évident*, *certain*, *sûr*, *vrai*, and the like. These take the subjunctive only when used negatively or interrogatively.

EXERCISE.

It is necessary that your father should come. - - - It
*falloir* ơ
is better that he should not go. - - It suffices that
*vaut mieux* ơ *partir.*
you command me, to make me obey without delay.
*pour que je*
- - - It is just that he should be rewarded. - - - It is
*recompensé.*
impossible that you should travel at this season. -
ơ *voyager dans*
(Thence it follows) that you are wrong. - - - It re-
*Il s'ensuit de là* *avoir tort.*
sults from the information they have received, that
*pris,*
the marriage of Mr. A. with Miss B. is broken off.
*et* ơ
- - It often happens that one does not succeed in the[2]
best[3] concerted[4] enterprises[1]. - - - - - Does it follow
*les* ơ

from thence that you are in the right ? - - - It is ev-
*avoir raison ?*
ident that you are my friend. - - - Is it certain that
she has arrived ?
*être*

V. The impersonal verb *Il semble*, it seems, when used with the pronouns, *me, te, nous, vous, lui, leur*, takes the indicative after it, though when employed without these pronouns it requires the subjunctive.

The verb *Entendre*, when it signifies *to hear, to understand*, requires the Indicative after it ; but in the signification of *to expect*, it requires the subjunctive. Thus the expression, J'entends que vous *chantez*, signifies *I hear that you sing ;* but, J'entends que vous *chantiez*, means, *I expect you to sing*.

The verb *Prétendre*, when it signifies *to maintain, to assert*, etc. requires the indicative ; but taken in the signification of *to will, to intend*, and the like, it requires the subjunctive.

EXERCISE.

It seems to me that you are displeased. - - - - - It
*fâché.*
seems to me that he has been embarrassed. - - It seems
*embarrassé.*
that you are displeased. - - It seems that he has been
embarrassed. - - - It seems as if it were nothing. - - -
*que cela ne*
I understand thereby that you are going away. - - - -
*par là*
(I give you my word for it), but at the same time
*Je vous le promets,*
I expect you will do all she pleases. - - - I maintain
*tout ce qui lui plaira.*

that she is right. - - - I assert that you do your duty.
*avoir raison.* *devoir*

- - - I intend that you shall do your duty.

VI. The subjunctive mood is used after the relative pronoun *qui*, who, when this relative has for its antecedent a noun qualified by an adjective in the superlative degree, that is, preceded by *le plus*, *le moins*, *le meilleur*, etc.

EXERCISE.

There are many bodies in the heavens, but the sun
*astre*,m.

is the largest that we perceive. - - - This tree is the
*on apercevoir.* *arbre*,f.

tallest (*or* the shortest) that I have ever seen. - -
*plus haut* *moins haut* *jamais*

This tortoise is the largest that has reached
*tortue*,f. *plus grosse* *être parvenue dans*

this country. - - - The linen of Mr. N. is the best
*pays*,m. *toile*,f. *la meilleure*

that one can find in this town. - - The caps
*pouvoir trouver* *ville*,f. *bonnet*,m.

of Mrs. C. are the best made that I have seen. - -
*les mieux faits* *vus.*

Religion is always the best guarantee that we can
*le meilleur* *garant*,m.

have of the morals of mankind.
*mœurs*,f. *hommes*,m.

EXCEPTION. If, however, the superlative is followed by a regimen indirect, as in the following exercise, the indicative mood must be used.

EXERCISE.

The sun is the largest of the bodies, (*regimen*
*le plus grand* *astre*,m.
*indirect*) that we perceive in the heavens. - - - - This
tortoise is the largest of all those which have
*la plus grosse* *celle*
reached this country. - - - This tree is the tallest
*parvenir* *dans*
of all those that I have seen. - - - - She is the most
beautiful of all the women that I know.
*connaître.*

VII. The subjunctive mood is used whenever the relative corresponds to one of the adjectives *nul, aucun, premier, second, troisième, dernier*, etc. ; and also whenever it refers to a noun or an adverb, which has a negative signification, such as *personne, peu, guère, rien, le seul*, etc.

EXERCISE.

Racine is the first who has known how to col-
*le premier* *ص ص* *ras-*
lect with art the springs of a tragic intrigue. - -
*sembler* *ressort*,m.
There is not one of his friends who (would not ven-
*ha-*
ture)* his own life to preserve his. - - - - There is
*zarder* *pour conserver* *Il n'y a*
nothing that refreshes the blood like a good action.
*rien* *refraîchir* *comme*
- - - - There are few kings who know how to seek
*peu de* *ص ص*

* See Note, page 178.

true glory. - - - The dog is the only animal whose
*le seul* *dont la*

fidelity is tried. - - - The only good which cannot
*à l'épreuve*,f. *qu'on ne*

(be taken from) us, is the merit of having done a
*enlever* *c'est*

good action. - - - There are few words, which, be-
*Il n'y a* *guère de mots*,m.

ing happily placed, cannot contribute to the sublime.

VIII. The subjunctive mood must be used after the pronouns *quelque . . que*, whatever ; *qui que*, whoever ; and *quoi que*, whatever.

EXERCISE.

Whatever effort men[2] make[1], their nothingness
*Quelques* *les* *que* *néant*

appears everywhere. - - - Whoever you may be, speak
*partout.* *Qui que* *parler*

without fear. - - Whatever you write, avoid meanness.
*Quoi que* *écriver* *bassesse*,f.

- - - Whatever you may say, an (ass's foal) will be-
*dire*, *ânon*,m. *ne de-*

come but an ass.
*venir que*

IX. The conjunction *si . . . que* requires the subjunctive after it, when it is used in the sense of *quelque . . que*, or when placed between two negatives.

Also when the conjunction *si* is supplied by *que* in the second member of a sentence.

EXERCISE.

However fine it may be, a hair makes
*Si* *mince que* *pouvoir* *cheveu*,m.

some shade. - - Your cousin, however rich he may be,
*ombre*,m. *si*

will not obtain the vote. - - - - Miss N. has not been
*obtenir* *suffrage*,m.pl.

so modest as not (to give herself) some praises.
*si* *qu'elle* *s'être donné*

He has not been so active as not to fall. - - If he
*leste* *qu'il* *être tombé.*

arrives, and (if) you see him before I do, speak to
*que* *moi* *en*

him of our affair. - - - - - If you come (to my house)
*venir* *chez-moi*

and (if) you do not find me in, have the goodness
*y*

to wait for me.
*attendre* *en*

A list of the conjunctions which require the subjunctive mood after them, will be found on the 86th page of the Grammar.

---

## VOCABULARY

Of Verbs which require the preposition *de* before the next infinitive. Those which are marked thus †, when followed by *que*, require the subjunctive.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Abstenir (se) | Approuver | Choisir |
| Abuser | Arrêter | †Commander |
| Accommoder (se) | Attendrir | Conclure |
| Achever | Attrister | †Conjurer |
| Acquitter (se) | Avertir | Conseiller |
| Affecter | Aviser (se) | Consoler (se) |
| Affliger | Blâmer | Contraindre |
| Affliger (se) | Censurer | Convaincre |
| Appercevoir (se) | Cesser | Convenir |
| †Appréhender | Chagriner | Craindre |
| Approcher (se) | Charger | Décharger |

Décourager
†Défendre
Défier (se)
Dégouter
Délibérer
Demander (en [grâce)
Démettre (se)
Dépêcher (se)
Désaccoutumer
Désespérer [(se)
Déshabituer (se)
Désister
Désoler
Déterminer
Détourner
Différer
Dire
Disconvenir
Dispenser
Divertir
Écrire
Édifier
Efforcer (se)
Effrayer
Embarrasser
Emanciper (se)
Emparer (se)
†Empêcher
Empresser (se)
Enjoindre
Ennuyer (se)
Enorgueillir (se)
Enrager
Entreprendre
Epouvanter
Essayer
Excuser
Exempter
†Exiger
Feindre
Finir
Flatter (se)
Garder
Gêner
Gronder
Haïr
Hâter (se)
Hésiter
Impatienter (se)
Indigner (se)
Informer (se)
Ingérer
Inquiéter (se)
Inspirer
†Juger (à propos)
Jouir
Jurer
Justifier
Lasser (se)
Louer
Mander
Manger
Médire
Méditer
Mêler (se)
Ménacer
Mériter
Moquer
Négliger
Notifier
Offrir
Omettre
†Ordonner
Oublier
Pardonner
Parler
Permettre
Persuader
Piquer (se)
Plaindre
Précipiter (se)
Préscrire
Présumer
†Prier
Professer
Profiter
Promettre
Proposer
Rebuter (se)
Recommander
Redouter
Refuser
Réjouir
Remercier
Repentir (se)
Reprendre
Réprimander
Reprocher
Résoudre
Ressouvenir (se)
Retenir
Sommer
Soucier (se)
Soupçonner
Suffire
Suggérer
†Supplier
Surprendre
Susciter
Tâcher
Tromper
Troubler
Vanter (se)

Observe that the greater part, if not all of the verbs which require the preposition *de* after them are generally, and may always be, rendered into English by a gerund, ei-

ther absolutely, or with one of the prepositions *of*, *from*, *with*, etc. ; as,

Il m'empêche *de* le faire ; *He hinders me from doing it.*
J'aurai le plaisir *de* la voir ; *I shall have the pleasure of seeing her.*

---

Verbs which require the preposition *à* before the next infinitive.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Abandonner (se) | Destiner | Obstiner (se) |
| Aboutir | Déterminer (se) | Obvier |
| Admettre | Disposer | Occuper (se) |
| Accoutumer (se) | Donner | Opposer (se) |
| Adhérer | Dresser | Ordonner (se) |
| †Aider | Éclairer | Parvenir |
| Aimer | Employer | Penser |
| Amuser (se) | Encourager | Perdre |
| Applaudir | Endurcir (se) | Persister |
| Appliquer (se) | Engager | †Plaire |
| Apprendre | Enhardir | Porter |
| Apprêter | Enseigner | †Pourvoir |
| Assigner | Exciter | Pousser |
| Attacher (se) | Exercer | Présenter |
| Attendre (se) | Exhorter | Prétendre |
| Autoriser | Exposer | Procéder |
| Chercher | Fier (se) | Renoncer |
| Compâtir | Habituer (se) | Résister |
| Condamner | Inciter | Ressembler |
| Condescendre | Incliner | Rester |
| Consister | Insulter | Songer |
| Contrevenir | Inviter | Subvenir |
| Contribuer | Jouer | Survivre |
| Convier | Mettre (se) | Tarder |
| Demeurer | Montrer | Tendre |
| Dépenser | Nuire | Travailler |
| Déplaire | Obéir | Viser |
| Désobéir | | |

Observe that most of the verbs which take *à* before the next infinitive generally are, and always may be, rendered in English by the gerund with the preposition *of*, *in*, or *for* ; as,

Elle prend plaisir *à* le faire endêver.
She takes pleasure *in* teasing him, etc.

**Verbs which sometimes take *à* and sometimes *de* before the next infinitive.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Commencer | Couter | Forcer |
| Contraindre | Discontinuer | Manquer |
| Continuer | Essayer | Obliger |

---

**Verbs which requîre no preposition before the next infinitive.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Affirmer | Écouter | Prétendre |
| Aimer mieux | Entendre | Pouvoir |
| Aller | Envoyer | Publier |
| Apercevoir | Épier | Rapporter |
| Assurer | Espérer | Reconnaître |
| Avouer | Faire | Regarder |
| Compter | Il faut | Savoir |
| Confesser | S'imaginer | Sembler |
| Considérer | Laisser | Soutenir |
| Croire | Nier | Souhaiter |
| Daigner | Observer | Valoir mieux |
| Déclarer | Oser | Voir |
| Déposer | Ouïr | Vouloir |
| Devoir | Paraître | |

---

## DE LA PLACE DE L'ADJECTIF.

(*Grammaire des Grammaires*, T. I. pp. 274 – 280.)

*Un* BON *homme* signifie le plus souvent un homme simple, crédule, qui se laisse dominer, tromper.

*Un* BRAVE *homme* est un homme de bien, de probité, dont le commerce est sûr.

*Une* COMMUNE *voix* est la réunion de tous les suffrages prononcés unanimement.

*Un* CRUEL *homme* est un homme ennuyeux, importun, etc., etc.

*Un homme* BON se dit d'un homme plein de candeur, d'affection, d'un homme charitable, compatissant.

*Un homme* BRAVE est un homme intrépide, qui affronte le danger sans crainte.

*Une voix* COMMUNE est une voix ordinaire, qui n'a rien de plus remarquable qu'une autre.

*Un homme* CRUEL est un homme inhumain, insensible, qui aime à faire souffrir ou à voir souffrir les autres.

*Une* FAUSSE *corde* est une corde d'instrument qui n'est pas montée au ton juste, au ton qu'il faut.

*Un* FAUX *accord* est un accord qui choque l'oreille, parce que les sons, quoique justes, ne forment pas un tout, un ensemble harmonique.

Un tableau est dans un FAUX *jour* quand il est éclairé du sens contraire à celui que le peintre a choisi dans son sujet.

*Une* FAUSSE *clef* est une clef que l'on garde, le plus souvent à dessein, pour en faire un usage illicite.

*Une* FAUSSE *porte* est une issue ménagée à l'effet de se dérober aux importuns, sans être vu.

FURIEUX, avant le substantif, signifie prodigieux, excessif, extraordinaire dans son genre ; *Un* FURIEUX *menteur*. *Une* FURIEUSE *entorse*.

*Un* GALANT *homme* est un homme poli, qui a des talents, des mœurs, et dont le commerce est sûr et agréable.

On ne dit pas *une galante femme*.

*La dernière année* est la dernière des années, dans une période dont on parle ;

*Une corde* FAUSSE est celle qui ne peut jamais s'accorder avec une autre.

*Un accord* FAUX est celui dont les intonations ne sont pas justes, dont les intonations ne gardent pas entre elles la justesse des intervalles.

Il y a un *jour* FAUX dans un tableau quand une partie y est éclairée contre nature, la disposition générale du tout exigeant, par exemple, que cette partie soit dans l'ombre.

*Une clef* FAUSSE est une clef qui n'est pas propre à la serrure pour laquelle on veut s'en servir.

*Une porte* FAUSSE est un simple simulacre de porte, en pierre, en marbre, en menuiserie, ou en peinture.

FURIEUX, après le substantif, signifie transporté de fureur, en furie ; *Fou* FURIEUX. *Lion* FURIEUX.

*Un homme* GALANT est un homme qui cherche à plaire aux femmes, qui leur rend de petits soins.

*Une femme galante* est une femme qui a des intrigues, et dont la conduite est déréglée.

*L'année dernière* est l'année qui précède immédiatement celle où l'on parle ;

| | |
|---|---|
| *la dernière année de son règne.* | *j'ai beaucoup voyagé l'année dernière.* |
| *Un* GRAND *homme* est un homme d'un grand mérite moral. | *Un homme* GRAND est un homme d'une grande taille. |
| *Le* GRAND *air* se dit d'un homme qui a les manières d'un grand personnage. | *L'air* GRAND se dit d'un homme dont la physionomie noble annonce une ame douée de grandes qualités. |
| *Une* GROSSE *femme* est une femme qui a beaucoup d'embonpoint. | *Une femme* GROSSE est une femme enceinte. |
| *Le* HAUT *ton* est une manière de parler audacieuse, arrogante. | *Le ton* HAUT est un degré supérieur d'élévation d'une voix chantante, ou du son d'un instrument. |
| *Un* HONNÊTE *homme* est un homme qui a des mœurs, de la probité, qui jouit de l'estime publique, etc. | *Un homme* HONNÊTE est un homme qui observe toutes les bienséances et tous les usages de la société. |

Une *honnête femme* est une femme d'une conduite irréprochable, quelques défauts qu'elle puisse avoir d'ailleurs.

| | |
|---|---|
| *D'*HONNÊTES *gens* sont ceux qui ont une réputation intègre, une naissance honnête et des mœurs douces. | *Des gens* HONNÊTES sont des personnes polies qui reçoivent bien ceux qui les visitent. |
| *Un* MALHONNÊTE *homme* est un homme qui n'a ni probité, ni sentiment d'honneur. | *Un homme* MALHONNÊTE est un homme qui fait des choses contraires à la civilité, à la bienséance. |
| MAUVAIS *air* est un extérieur ignoble, un maintien gauche. | *L'air* MAUVAIS est un extérieur redoubtable. |
| Cet air tient aux manières. | Celui-ci tient au caractère. |

Cléon, lorsque vous nous bravez,
En démontrant votre figure,
Vous n'avez pas *l'air mauvais*, je vous jure :
C'est *mauvais air* que vous avez. (Le C^e^ *de Choiseuil.*)

| | |
|---|---|
| *Une* MÉCHANTE *épigramme* est une épigramme sans sel, sans esprit. | *Une épigramme* MÉCHANTE, est une épigramme qui offre un trait malin et piquant. |

*Du* MORT *bois* est du bois de peu de valeur qui n'est propre à aucun ouvrage.

MORTE *eau* se dit des marées quand elles sont extrêmement basses.

*Le* NOUVEAU *vin* est le vin nouvellement mis en perce, ou du vin différent de celui que l'on buvoit.

*De* NOUVEAUX *livres*, ce sont d'autres livres, des livres autres que ceux que l'on a, ou que l'on a lus.

*Un* NOUVEL *habit* est un habit différent de celui que l'on vient de quitter.

*Un* PAUVRE *homme* est un homme de peu de mérite, qui est incapable de faire ce que l'on désire de lui.

*Une* PAUVRE langue est celle qui, outre la disette des termes, n'a ni douceur, ni énergie, ni beauté.

*Un* PLAISANT *homme* est un homme bizarre, ridicule, singulier.

*Un* PLAISANT *personnage* est un impertinent digne de mépris.

*Un* PLAISANT *conte* est un récit sans vérité et sans vraisemblance.

*Un* PETIT *homme* est un homme d'une petite stature.

*Du bois* MORT est du bois séché sur pied.

*Eau* MORTE, c'est l'eau qui ne coule pas ; comme l'eau des étangs, des mares, etc.

*Le vin* NOUVEAU, c'est le vin nouvellement fait.

*Des livres* NOUVEAUX, ce sont des livres imprimés depuis peu.

*Un habit* NOUVEAU est un habit de nouvelle mode.

*Un habit* NEUF est un habit qui n'a point, ou qui a peu servi.

*Un homme* PAUVRE est un homme sans biens.

*Une langue* PAUVRE est celle qui n'a pas tout ce qui est nécessaire à l'expression des pensées.

*Un homme* PLAISANT est un homme gai, enjoué, qui fait rire.

*Un personnage* PLAISANT est celui dont le rôle est rempli de traits divertissants, de saillies fines, de reparties ingénieuses.

*Un conte* PLAISANT est un récit agréable et amusant.

*Un homme* PETIT est un homme méprisable, qui fait des choses au-dessous de son rang, de sa dignité.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Les* PROPRES *termes* sont les mêmes mots sans y rien changer ; *la confiance dans les citations dépend de la fidélité à rapporter les* PROPRES TERMES *des livres ou des actes qu'on allègue.* | *Les termes* PROPRES sont des mots qui expriment bien, et selon l'usage de la langue, ce que l'on veut dire ; *la justesse dans le langage exige que l'on choisisse scrupuleusement les* TERMES PROPRES. |

NOTA. *Propre*, employé par énergie, et par une sorte de redondance, doit précéder le substantif ; *ses* PROPRES *amis le blâment, il néglige ses* PROPRES *intérêts.* Le sens est ; *ses amis le blâment, il néglige jusqu'à ses intérêts.*

| | |
|---|---|
| *Un* SIMPLE *homme* est un homme seul, unique ; *Cette personne n'a qu'un simple homme, un simple valet à son service.* | *Un homme* SIMPLE est un homme qui a de la simplicité ; *Les gens simples sont crédules ; sans déguisement, sans malice.* |
| *De* SIMPLES *airs* sont des airs qui ne sont pas accompagnés de paroles. | *Des airs* SIMPLES sont des airs naturels, sans ornements. |
| UNIQUE *tableau*, seul en nombre. | *Tableau* UNIQUE, seul en son genre, incomparable. |
| *Un* VILAIN *homme, une* VILAINE *femme*, c'est un homme ou une femme désagréable par la figure, par la malpropreté, ou méprisable par les manières et par les vices. | *Un homme* VILAIN, ou plutôt *un homme fort vilain*, signifie un homme qui vit très-mesquinement et qui épargne d'une manière sordide. |

## REMARQUES DÉTACHÉES.

Les mots qui expriment le *cri des animaux* et leurs *parties communes* sont essentiels à connaître.

### CRI. *On dit.*

| | |
|---|---|
| L'abeille, le bourdon et la mouche *bourdonnent.* | L'âne *braît.* |
| L'aigle *trompette.* | Le buffle *souffle, beugle.* |
| L'alouette *grisolle, tirelire.* | La caille *carcaille, margotte.* |
| | Le canard *nasille.* |

Les gros chiens *aboient.*
Les petits chiens *jappent.*
La cigale *craquelle* et *chante.*
Le cochon *grogne.*
La colombe et le ramier *gémissent.*
Le coq *coqueline* et *chante.*
Le corbeau *croasse.*
La grenouille *coasse.*
Le crocodile *lamente.*
Le dindon *glougloute.*
L'éléphant *barète.*
L'épervier le lapin et le renard *glapissent.*
Le faon *râle.*
Le hibou *hue.*
L'hirondelle *gazouille.*
La huppe *pupule.*
Le lion *rugit.*
Le loriot, le merle et le serpent *sifflent.*
Le milan *huit.*
Le moineau *pépie.*
Le paon *braille, criaille*
Le perroquet *cause.*
La pie *jacasse.*
Le pigeon *roucoule.*
La poule *glousse.*
Les petits poulets *piaulent.*
Le rossignol *ramage.*
Le sanglier *gromelle.*
Le taureau *mugit* et *beugle*
Le tigre *rauque.*

(Académie, Buffon, Valmont de Bomare.)

PARTIES COMMUNES. *On dit :*

LE PIED, d'un cheval, d'un bœuf, d'un veau, d'un cerf, d'un chameau, d'un éléphant, d'un mouton, d'un cochon, d'une chèvre, et de tous les animaux chez lesquels cette partie est de corne.

LA PATTE d'un chien, d'un chat, d'un lièvre, d'un lapin, d'un lion, d'un ours, d'un singe, d'un rat, d'une grenouille, d'un crapaud, d'un chardonneret, d'un pinson, de tous les oiseaux qui ne sont pas oiseaux de proie, et en général de tous les animaux chez lesquels cette partie n'est pas de corne.

LA BOUCHE d'un cheval, d'un chameau, d'un âne, d'un mulet, d'un bœuf, d'un éléphant.

LA GUEULE d'un brochet, d'un crocodile, d'un lézard, d'une carpe, d'une truite, d'un serpent, d'une vipère, d'un lion, d'un tigre, d'un chien, d'un loup, d'un chat.

LE BEC d'un perroquet, d'une hirondelle, en un mot de tous les volatiles.

LE GROIN d'un cochon.

Le museau d'un renard, d'une bellette.
Le mufle d'un cerf, d'un taureau, d'un bœuf, d'un lion, d'un tigre, d'un léopard.
Les défenses, d'un éléphant, d'un sanglier.
La tête d'un lion, d'un cheval, d'un mouton, d'un oiseau, d'un poisson, d'une mouche, d'un serpent.
La hure d'un sanglier, d'un brochet, d'un saumon, d'un loup.
Le bois d'un cerf.
La corne d'un rhinocéros.
Les os d'une baleine, l'os d'une sèche.
Les arêtes d'un brochet, et de tout autre poisson.
(Académie, Buffon, Valmont de Bomare.)

Cacophonie. — *Dites :* Cacophonie, *et non :* Cacaphonie. Quelquefois, dans la poésie familière, on fait des cacophonies à dessein ; témoin la suivante :

*Didon dinait, dit-on,*
*Du dos d'un dodu dindon.* (Dorvigny.)

Les anecdotiers ont rapporté cette singulière cacophonie que fit un magistrat du tems de la Fronde ; après avoir ordonné d'étendre une chaîne dans la rue, impatient, il s'écria ; *Qu'attend-on donc tant ! Que ne la tend-on donc là !*
(Extrait des *Récréations Grammaticales*, de Daniel.)

Donner a boire. — Deux sots demandaient à Fontenelle s'il fallait dire ; *Donnez-nous à boire*, ou : *versez-nous à boire.* L'académicien leur répondit ; "Les deux expressions sont bonnes : mais vous pourriez dire aussi ; *Menez-nous boire.*"

Entendre. — Entendre *la raillerie*, c'est avoir le talent de bien railler.

Entendre *raillerie*, c'est souffrir la raillerie sans se fâcher. (Blondin.)

Être. — Est-ce la votre livre ? *Oui, c'est* Lui. Ce mot *lui* est une faute. Répondez : *Oui, ce l'est* ou bien:

OUI, *c'est* MON LIVRE. — SONT *ce là vos parens ? Oui, ce* LES *sont.* Répondez : *Oui, se sont* EUX. — *Sont ce là vos nièces ? Oui, ce* LES *sont.* Répondez : *Oui, ce sont* ELLES. REGLE : Quand on parle de choses inanimées, on doit répondre : *ce l'est, ce les sont,* ou répéter le nom de ces choses : mais il faut répondre : *c'est lui, c'est elle, ce sont eux, ce sont elles,* quand on parle des personnes.

(*Manuel de* M. BLONDIN.)

GRAMMAIRE. — Le petit-fils de D'Aguesseau, ayant été admis dans une Société littéraire disait modestement qu'on l'avait reçu à cause de son *grand-père.* Le grammairien Beauzée lui répondit : Je l'ai bien été à cause de ma *grand-mère* (Grammaire). Plusieurs prétendent que c'est cette plaisanterie qui a donné lieu à la prononciation vicieuse *gran-mère* pour *grammaire.*

JEUNES PERSONNES. — N'est-il pas honteux de voir à Paris des enseignes des maisons d'éducation ainsi conçues : *Pension de jeunes personnes du* SEXE ? Y-a-t-il des jeunes personnes qui ne soient pas du sexe ?

(MARLE, *Précis d'Orthologie.*)

JOUIR. — *Jouir d'une mauvaise santé ; jouir d'une mauvaise réputation,* sont des locutions aussi ridicules que le seraient celles-ci : *Souffrir d'une bonne santé ; souffrir d'une bonne réputation.* (LAVEAUX, PHILLIPON-DE-LA-MADELAINE.)

LIAISON *des mots.* — Un jeune homme était au spectacle dans une loge, à côté de deux dames richement parées, mais dont la conversation annonçait bien le peu d'éducation qu'elles avaient reçu. Tout-à-coup le jeune homme trouve sous sa main un éventail ; " Madame, dit-il, à la première, cet éventail est-il à vous ? — Il n'est point-z-à moi. — Est-il à vous ? en le presentant à l'autre. — Il n'est pâ-t-à-moi. — Il n'est poin-z-à vous, il n'est pâ-t-à vous, dit le jeune homme ; je ne sais *pâ-t-à-qu'est-ce.*"

Cette plaisanterie a couru dans les cercles, et a donné naissance au mot *Pâ-t-à-qu'est-ce.*

(Extrait du *Manuel* de M. Boniface.)

On a donné le nom de *velours* aux fausses liaisons formées par la lettre *s*, et celui de *cuir* à celles qui sont formées par la lettre *t* ; ainsi la première dame avait fait un *velours*, et la seconde un *cuir*. (LES OMNIBUS DU LANGAGE.)

MONSIEUR. — *Prononcez :* Mocieu, *et non :* Monsieu, *ni* Monsieure. (MARLE.)

MORT-IVRE se dit d'un homme ; mais, en parlant d'une femme, *il faut dire :* IVRE-MORTE ; car dans un homme *mort-ivre*, une femme *morte-ivre*, on prononce également *mor-tivre*, et la différence des genres ne se trouve pas indiquée par la prononciation. (LAVEAUX.)

QUIPROQUO. — *Prononcez :* Kiproko, *et non ;* Kuiproko. (WAILLY.)

*Quiproquo de Louis XV.* — M. de Nédouchel, anglomane déterminé, suivait un jour à cheval la voiture de Louis XV. Il avait plu, et M. de Nédouchel, allant dans la boue éclaboussait le roi qui, mettant la tête à la portière, lui dit : " M. de Nédouchel, vous me *crottez.*" — " Oui, Sire, à l'anglaise," répondit-il, d'un air très-satisfait. Au lieu de *crottez*, il avait entendu *trottez*. Le roi, sans se douter de la méprise, se contenta de lever les glaces avec bonhomie, en disant ; " Voilà un trait d'anglomanie ; mais il est un peu fort."

(Extrait des *Récréations Grammaticales* de M. Daniel.)

TOUCHER. — On *touche* le clavecin, le forté-piano, l'orgue.
On *bat* la caisse, le tambour, les timbales.
On *donne* du cor.
On *sonne* du cor et de la trompette.
On *pince* la harpe, la guitare, le luth, le théorbe.
On *joue* de tous les instruments.
(GIRAULT-DUVIVIER, LAVEAUX, MOREL.)

VILLE. — *Dites :* Ce jeune homme est en VILLE, *pour :* Il n'est pas chez lui ; *et,* Ce jeune homme est à la VILLE, *pour :* Il n'est pas à la campagne.
(BOUHOURS, BOISTE.)

THE END.

# FRENCH, GERMAN, AND ITALIAN TEXT-BOOKS.

## BELLENGER'S CONVERSATIONAL PHRASES AND DIALOGUES,

In French and English. Compiled chiefly from the 13th and last Paris edition of Bellenger's Conversational Phrases, with many additions and corrections. Edited by PICKERING. 18mo. pp. 138. Cloth. 31c.

"Bellenger's Conversational Phrases, which was published not long ago in Paris, is now extensively used in France, where it has already passed through EIGHTEEN editions. It is intended particularly for the use of schools, and is consequently elementary in its character. The subjects of the lessons are judiciously arranged under appropriate heads, and in a systematic order, well adapted to the gradual progress made by the younger, as well as the more advanced student." — *The Preface.*

## BACHI'S ITALIAN FABLES.

Raccolta di Favole Morali; or, a Collection of Italian Fables in Prose and Verse, selected from the Works of the best Italian Fabulists, with Interlinear Translations and Explanation of Idioms. 12mo. New edition in press.

## BACHI'S ITALIAN PHRASES.

Conversazione Italiana; or, a Collection of Phrases and Familiar Dialogues in Italian and English. 12mo. New edition in press.

## BACHI'S RUDIMENTS OF THE ITALIAN LANGUAGE;

or, Easy Lessons in Spelling and Reading, with an Abridgment of the Grammar. In press.

## BARBAULD'S HYMNS FOR CHILDREN,

Being a Sequel to the "Easy Lessons." pp. 116. Cloth. 50c.

## GERMAN READER FOR BEGINNERS.

Compiled by BERNARD RÖLKER, Instructor in Harvard University. 12mo. pp. 332. Half morocco. $1,25.

"The object in compiling this new German Reader was, to give to those who begin the study of the German language such selections from German literature as might prove easy enough for their first attempts at translating, and at the same time of sufficient interest in themselves." — *The Preface.*

The selection in this volume is made principally from the works of Goethe, Uhland, Schiller, Schlegel, Hoffman, and others.

"We have been highly gratified by an examination of the work itself. Every teacher, and many students of the German language, must feel a relief in finding a new volume of selections adapted to their use. Mr. R. has avoided a common error in works of this kind, by making his selections in part from authors not in the hands of most students, and not confining himself in the main to Goethe and Schiller, whose 'complete works' are to be found in almost every library." — *Boston Daily Advertiser.*

## GERMAN EXERCISES.

Exercises for writing German, adapted to the Rules of German Grammar. By J. G. TIARKS, P. D. First American edition. Arranged by BERNARD RÖLKER, Instructor of German in Harvard University. 12mo. pp. 115. Cloth. 50c.

**GERMAN AND ENGLISH PHRASE BOOK,**
By FRANCIS GRAETER. 12mo. Sheep. 84c.

**GERMAN VERSION OF THE GOSPEL OF ST. JOHN,**
With an Interlinear English Translation, for the Use of Students. By CHARLES FOLLEN, Professor of the German Language and Literature in Harvard University. 12mo. pp. 172. 84c.

"This Interlinear Translation of the Gospel of St. John is intended to assist those who wish to study the German language, in the beginning of their course." — *The Preface.*

**IL TESORETTO DELLO SCOLARE ITALIANO;**
Or, the Art of Translating English into Italian at Sight. By LOUIS FENWICK PORQUET. Revised, corrected, and improved, by F. SALES. 12mo. pp. 172. Boards. 62½c.

**LA HENRIADE,**
Poème, par Voltaire. Stereotype Edition, revised and corrected, with Annotations. 18mo. pp. 171. Half cloth. 31c.

**LONGFELLOW'S FRENCH GRAMMAR.**
Elements of French Grammar. By L'HOMOND. Translated from the French, with Notes and Exercises. By H. W. LONGFELLOW, Professor of Modern Languages in Harvard College. 12mo. Eighth Edition. pp. 196. Sheep. 75c.

**MANUEL DE PROVERBES DRAMATIQUES;**
Selected by Professor LONGFELLOW. Third Edition. 12mo. pp. 333. Cloth. 75c.

The Proverbes Dramatiques is a collection of small comedies, illustrating familiar proverbs. The colloquial style is more difficult than that of plain narrative; but, after going through the first text-book of the course, the mind of the pupil is prepared to undertake a more difficult task.

**PUBLIUS VIRGILIUS MARO;**
From the text of HEYNE. Without Notes. 12mo. pp. 307. $1,00.

**SURAULT'S GRAMMAR OF THE ITALIAN LANGUAGE;**
For the Use of Colleges and Schools. 12mo. pp. 280. Sheep. 84c.

It is believed that the student will find here all that he wants, and nothing more; and that he will not be obliged to exercise any discretion as to what should be selected and what rejected; a discretion which, of course, no learner is qualified to exercise. The rules in the syntax are few and short, but are made clear by copious examples; and the treatise on Italian versification, though brief and elementary, will be found complete.

**SURAULT'S FRENCH EXERCISES;**
Adapted to all French Grammars. Second Edition. 12mo. pp. 120. Half cloth. 50c.

**SURAULT'S FRENCH FABLES;**
With a Key and a Treatise on Pronunciation, for those who begin to read the French Language. 12mo. pp. 272. Half cloth. 75c.

**SURAULT'S FRENCH QUESTIONS**
On Sir WALTER SCOTT'S Tales of a Grandfather, for the Use of Learners who are beginning to speak the French Language. 12mo. pp. 222. Half cloth. 75c.

# SCHOOL AND COLLEGE TEXT-BOOKS.

**BUCKINGHAM'S DEVOTIONAL EXERCISES;**
For Schools and Families. By J. T. BUCKINGHAM. Second Edition, with large Additions. 18mo. pp. 192. Half cloth. 38c.

"It is by far the best thing of the kind that has been attempted, and the only one against which no sectarian objections can be urged. Every word of it is taken from the Bible, and yet it imbodies all the variety, in the form of precept and prayer, essential to the devotional exercises of a school." — *Philadelphia North American.*

"We regard this work as one of great value, and we shall feel ourselves most happy if we can be instrumental in procuring its introduction into our common schools." — *New York Commercial.*

**COLERIDGE'S INTRODUCTION**
To the Study of the Greek Classic Poets, designed principally for the Use of Young Persons at School and College. By HENRY NELSON COLERIDGE, Esq., A. M., late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge. Containing, 1. General Introduction; 2. Homer. 12mo. pp. 242. Cloth. 75c.

"The subject of the Homeric poetry, to which the greater part of the volume is devoted, is admirably discussed. There is ample learning, without pedantry or ostentation; and good sense, good taste, and scholar-like elegance of style. The various theories on the origin of the Homeric poems are stated with clearness and distinctness. The manifold beauties of the Iliad and Odyssey are developed with critical sagacity, and with a warmth of sensibility which never becomes overstrained or extravagant." — *North American Review.*

**DAY'S OUTLINES OF PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY;**
Designed as a Companion to the Common School Geography, and for the Use of Grammar and High Schools. By JOHN Q. DAY. 12mo. pp. 186. Cloth. 62½c.

"We like the plan, and, so far as we have examined it, are pleased with the execution of this book. A friend, whose opinion on such a subject is entitled to much more weight than ours, and who has no acquaintance with the author, after examining a portion of it, spoke of it to us in strong terms of approbation, as filling a new and important place among school-books." — *Christian Register.*

**EDWARD'S FIRST LESSONS IN GRAMMAR,**
By the Author of "Theory of Teaching." 18mo. pp. 108. Half cloth. 30c.

**ELEMENTS OF ORNITHOLOGY;**
* Intended for the College and the Parlor. By CHARLES BROOKS. Illustrated by 400 cuts. 12mo. pp. 324. Cloth. $1,25.

"A work designed as one of a series of works on zoölogy. We hope the author will be able to complete his design. From the manner in which this is executed, and the familiar style in which most of it is written, we are sure it will become popular." — *Boston Courier.*

"It is long since we have encountered an educational work so interesting in design, and judicious in arrangement." — *Literary World.*

## ELEMENTS OF GEOMETRY.

* Introduction to Geometry and the Science of Form. Translated from the most approved Prussian Text-Books. 1 vol. 12mo. pp. 180. With Plates, and 100 Figures. Sheep. 84c.

This volume has been prepared under the eye of a practical teacher, and is designed to meet an actual want. It is introduced into very many of our High Schools and Academies, Normal School at Lexington, and is also required for examination for entrance into Harvard College.

"Most opportunely for our own wishes, and, we hope, for the uses of many of our readers, there has been placed in our hands, this morning, a school-book of the above title, comprising about 150 pages 12mo., with diagrams. On a hasty examination, we are free to say, that hardly any school-book has ever so nearly met our *ideal* of what was needed. The compiler has hit the nail on the head, and fulfilled, we believe, that great public duty, of meeting most happily an actual public want." — *Portland Advertiser.*

## GEOMETRICAL BLOCKS,

* To illustrate the above, in neat cases; containing the Sphere, Cone, &c. $2,00.

## EULER'S ALGEBRA.

An Introduction to the Elements of Algebra, designed for the Use of those who are acquainted only with the First Principles of Arithmetic. Selected from the Algebra of EULER. Second Edition. By JOHN FARRAR, Professor, &c. 8vo. Half cloth. $1,00.

## ELECTRICITY AND MAGNETISM.

Elements of Electricity, Magnetism, and Electro-Dynamics, embracing the Latest Discoveries and Improvements, digested into the Form of a Treatise for the Use of Students. By JOSEPH LOVERING, Hollis Professor in Harvard University. New Edition. 8vo. pp. 344. Plates. Half cloth. $2,50.

## FARRAR'S TOPOGRAPHY.

An Elementary Treatise on the Application of Trigonometry to Orthographic and Stereographic Projection, Dialling, Mensuration of Heights and Distances, Navigation, Nautical Astronomy, Surveying, and Levelling, together with Logarithmic and other Tables. Designed for the Use of Students. Second Edition. 8vo. Half cloth. $1,25.

"The several parts of this volume are prepared with great care. The tables are from the stereotype plates of Bowditch's Practical Navigator, the correctness of which is too well known to need any recommendation."

## FARRAR'S CALCULUS.

First Principles of Differential and Integral Calculus, or the Doctrine of Fluxions. Intended as an Introduction to the Physico-Mathematical Sciences. Taken chiefly from BEZOUT, and translated from the French. 8vo. Half cloth. $1,00.

## FARRAR'S TRIGONOMETRY.

An Elementary Treatise on Plane and Spherical Trigonometry, and on the Application of Algebra to Geometry. From the Mathematics of LACROIX and BEZOUT. Translated from the French, for the Use of Students. 8vo. Half cloth. $1,00.

## FARRAR'S ASTRONOMY.

An Elementary Treatise on Astronomy, adapted to the present improved State of the Science. By JOHN FARRAR, late Professor of Natural Philosophy at Harvard College. 8vo. Half cloth. $2,50.

## GOLDSBURY'S GRAMMAR.

A Concise and Comprehensive Manual of English Grammar; containing, in Addition to the First Principles and Rules briefly stated and explained, a Systematic Order of Parsing, a Number of Examples for Drilling Exercises, and a few in False Syntax; particularly adapted to the Use of Common Schools and Academies. By JOHN GOLDSBURY, A. M., Teacher of the High School, Cambridge, Mass. Eighth Edition. 12mo. pp. 94. Half cloth. 20c.

Professor Felton writes, "I have read your 'Manual of English Grammar' with attention. It seems to me to have the qualities of simplicity, brevity, and clearness, to a remarkable degree. All that is essential to an exact knowledge of the English language, and of the practice of the most correct writers, it appears to me, you have brought within a very narrow compass. As a practical grammar of the English language, it cannot fail to be useful both to teachers and scholars. The outline of the principles of Rhetoric, at the end, is concise and intelligible. It contains directions in the art of composition, which will prove valuable, not only to young scholars, but to many practised writers."

## GOLDSBURY'S SEQUEL TO THE GRAMMAR.

A Sequel to the Common School Grammar; containing, in Addition to other Materials and Illustrations, Notes and Critical Remarks on the Philosophy of the English Language, and explaining some of its most difficult idiomatic Phrases; designed for the Use of the First Class in Common Schools. By JOHN GOLDSBURY, A. M., Teacher of the High School, Cambridge, Mass. 12mo. pp. 110. Half cloth. 20c.

Professor Sears, in speaking of these two works, (the Grammar and Sequel,) says, "The titles of these two books are a faithful description of their contents. They fully come up to that which they promise. Murray's Grammar is taken for the basis, but the author is by no means confined to one master. He exhibits resources and talents of his own. No work on the subject has pleased us more. The first is wholly elementary. The second introduces the advanced scholar to an acquaintance with some of the most interesting facts relating to his native tongue."

## GOLDSBURY'S NEW THEORIES OF GRAMMAR.

A Brief Review of four different Theories of English Grammar, opposed to that of Murray. With an Appendix, giving some Account of Particles, Combinations, Auxiliaries, Ellipses, Idiomatic Phrases, &c. By JOHN GOLDSBURY, A. M., Teacher of the High School, Cambridge, Mass. 12mo. pp. 82. Paper. 20c.

## HILL'S ARITHMETIC.

* An Elementary Treatise on Arithmetic, designed as an Introduction to PEIRCE'S Course of Pure Mathematics, and as a Sequel to the Arithmetics used in the High Schools of New England. By THOMAS HILL, 1 vol. 12mo. pp. 94. Half cloth. 37½c.

"This work aims rather at the development of ideas, than the inculcation of rules. It would teach the student how to think, how to handle the idea of numbers with which he is familiar."—*The Preface.*

## LACROIX'S ALGEBRA.

Elements of Algebra. By S. F. LACROIX. Translated from the French, for the Use of Students, by JOHN FARRAR. Third Edition. 1 vol. 8vo. $1,00.

## MASON ON GOVERNMENT.

* An Elementary Treatise on the Structure and Operations of the National and State Governments of the United States. Designed for the Use of Schools and Academies, and for General Readers. By CHARLES MASON, A. M., Counsellor at Law. 12mo. pp. 233. Sheep. 84c.

"I do not hesitate to pronounce it an exceedingly useful, valuable, and accurate treatise on the subject, and admirably adapted for our academies by its clearness, its excellent arrangement, and its detailed views of many of our institutions." — *Hon. Judge Story.*

## MORAL PHILOSOPHY.

A System of Moral Philosophy, adapted to Children and Families, and especially to Common Schools. By Rev. D. STEELE, and a Friend. 18mo. pp. 80. Half cloth. 15c.

"This work having been submitted, while in manuscript, to Drs. Day, Silliman, Bond, Potter, Durbin, and others, and by them having been pronounced 'very good,' needs no other recommendation, than to say that it is contained in a small 18mo. of 80 pages, well printed, with a good, large, fair type; and that the style is so simple, easy, plain, and intelligible, that it is next to impossible to misunderstand it." — *Christian Advocate.*

## OUTLINES OF ANALYSIS.

* Outlines of the Course of Qualitative Analysis, followed in the Giessen Laboratory. By HENRY WILL, P. D., Professor of Chemistry in the University of Giessen. With a Preface by BARON LIEBIG. First American Edition. 12mo. Edited by Prof. HOSFORD. Cloth. 75c.

## STEWART'S PHILOSOPHY.

Elements of the Philosophy of the Human Mind. By DUGALD STEWART. New stereotype Edition. 1 vol. 8vo. pp. 627. Sheep. $2,50.

The present edition of this work was reprinted from the last English edition, on a new type, and, unlike the previous, the notes are incorporated as foot-notes, and the Addenda has been placed in the various pages where it belongs, the whole making one volume of 627 pages. The merits of this work as a text-book are well and favorably known, and it is now used in Harvard, Yale, and other colleges.

## PEIRCE'S ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON SOUND;

Designed for the Use of High Schools and Colleges. Compiled by BENJAMIN PEIRCE, A. M., Perkins Professor of Mathematics and Astronomy in Harvard University. 8vo. pp. 276. Plates. Cloth. $1,50.

"Professor Peirce lays no claim to originality in this work. He tells us that he made Sir John Herschel's Treatise on Sound, written for the Encyclopædia Metropolitana, the basis of his own book. In remodelling that work, he has consulted all the works on sound of any consequence, as well as imbodied the very important discoveries recently made by Faraday; in a word, he has wrought a pleasing and symmetrical whole out of all the loose and scattered materials which relate to the subject. The labor of such a task is immense, and it is no small praise to say that it has been done accurately, and leaves nothing more to be desired." — *N. A. Review.*

## PEIRCE'S MATHEMATICS.

A Course of Instruction in Pure Mathematics, for the Use of Students. By BENJAMIN PEIRCE, A. M., Perkins Professor of Mathematics and Astronomy in Harvard University.

### AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON ALGEBRA,

To which are added Exponential Equations and Logarithms. Third Edition. 12mo. pp. 288. Sheep. 84c.

"We can say nothing better for the book than that he (Prof. P.) prepared it, and that it fully sustains the reputation for science which he has already won. Those who are interested in the subject will find many new things in this treatise, deserving their attention, particularly the polynomial theorem of Arbogast." — *Examiner.*

### AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON GEOMETRY.

An Elementary Treatise on Plane and Solid Geometry. 1 vol. 12mo. pp. 170. With Plates. Second Edition. Sheep. 84c.

"The book is throughout simple, though neat and concise; and, as far as we can see, leaves nothing to be desired in this branch of mathematics. Every page shows the same power of condensing, and the same neatness and elegance, for which the two works on trigonometry, by the same author, are so remarkable." — *N. A. Review.*

### AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON TRIGONOMETRY.

An Elementary Treatise on Plane and Spherical Trigonometry; with their Applications to Navigation, Surveying, Heights and Distances, and Spherical Astronomy, and particularly adapted to explaining the Construction of Bowditch's Navigator, and the Nautical Almanac. Third Edition. 12mo. pp. 450. With Plates. Sheep. $1,50.

"The work of which we give the title above (Plane and Spherical Trigonometry) is part of a course of elementary mathematics, which he (Prof. P.) has given notice that he intends to publish. They show, throughout, the marks of an original thinker. But in this work there is a unity and homogeneousness, which shows that it is not mere compilation, but that it has passed through and been reproduced by the author's own mind. The analysis is conducted throughout in the most finished and elegant manner." — *N. A. Review.*

"As a text-book for such a course of instruction as is usually taught in our colleges, it (the Plane Trigonometry) seems to be superior to any before published on that subject; and, if the projected course of elementary treatises be carried out in the same spirit and style, there is no doubt they will be highly useful to both teachers and pupils." — *Mathematical Miscellany.*

### ON CURVES, FUNCTIONS, AND FORCES.

Volume First, containing Analytic Geometry and Differential Calculus. 12mo. pp. 304. Illustrated by 167 Figures. Sheep. $1,25.

Volume Second, containing Integral Calculus and Analytical Mechanics. 12mo. pp. 298. Sheep. $1,25.

"This volume is marked with almost every excellence that can be sought in a work of the kind. In beauty and compactness of symbols, in terseness and simplicity of style, in vigor and originality of thought, and in happy selections of lines of investigation, it equals the first volume — as high praise as we could bestow." — *Christian Examiner.*

Volume Third, containing Application of Analytical Mechanics to Physics and Astronomy. In press.

## PICTORIAL NATURAL HISTORY.

A Pictorial Natural History; embracing a View of the Mineral, Vegetable, and Animal Kingdoms. For the Use of Schools. By S. G. GOODRICH. With 400 Cuts. 12mo. pp. 416. Half morocco. $1,00.

"The style in which the work is written has all the fascination of Peter Parley's pen, and is more attractive than fiction." — *Providence Journal.*

"It is enlivened by descriptions of the most striking and interesting points in the history of each object, and the scientific and technical words employed are simplified and explained." — *Boston Advertiser.*

"Many of the latest discoveries in Nature's vast cabinet are brought before us in a familiar and comprehensible manner. It will be useful, not only to schools, but in families also." — *Olive Branch, N. Y.*

## WILLIAMS'S ALGEBRA.

An Elementary Treatise on Algebra, in Theory and Practice, with Attempts to simplify some of the more difficult Parts of that Science. To which is added an Appendix, on the Application of Algebra to Geometry. By JOHN D. WILLIAMS. 12mo. pp. 605. Sheep. $1,00.

## WHATELY'S LOGIC.

Elements of Logic; comprising the Substance of the Article in the Encyclopædia Metropolitana; with Additions, &c. By RICHARD WHATELY, D. D., Archbishop of Dublin. 12mo. pp. 360. Cloth. 80c.

"This elementary treatise holds a very high rank among the educational works of the day, having been introduced into many of the best managed and popular seminaries of learning, both in England and the United States. It is got up in the usually correct and beautiful style of most Boston books." — *Merchant's Magazine.*

## QUESTIONS TO WHATELY'S LOGIC;

Prepared by a Teacher. In press.

## WHATELY'S RHETORIC.

Elements of Rhetoric; comprising the Substance of the Article in the Encyclopædia Metropolitana; with Additions, &c. By RICHARD WHATELY, D. D., Archbishop of Dublin. 12mo. pp. 360. Cloth. 75c.

"Both have been well received, and that which we are now to speak of [the Rhetoric] is adopted as a text-book in our higher seminaries." — *American Monthly Review.*

## QUESTIONS TO WHATELY'S RHETORIC;

Prepared by a Teacher. 12mo. pp. 34. Paper. 13c.

## WHATELY'S LESSONS ON REASONING.

Easy Lessons on Reasoning, in Seventeen Lessons. By RICHARD WHATELY, D. D., Archbishop of Dublin. 12mo. pp. 164. Cloth. 63c.

In offering to the consideration of teachers and others the stereotype editions of the above works of Archbishop Whately, the publishers would say, that these works have been carefully revised by a practical teacher. The questions were made by one who has long felt the need of a text-book with questions for examination, and it is believed that they will meet the desired object in all respects.

"The work before us is an attempt to simplify the study of logic, and to set the young person at the good work of thinking, — thinking correctly and speaking correctly. The attempt is admirable, and the volume deserves general patronage." — *United States Gazette.*

## WORCESTER'S AMERICAN PRIMARY SPELLING-BOOK.

Sixth Edition. 18mo. Half cloth. 10c.

"It is intended to be used in teaching children the rudiments of reading and spelling, by a series of lessons addressed to the understanding as well as to the eye and memory." — *The Preface.*

## WORCESTER'S SEQUEL TO THE SPELLING-BOOK.

Eighth Edition. 12mo. Half cloth. 15c.

"The arrangements of these books are excellent. Many of the spelling-lessons are accompanied with definitions, and classified as nouns, abstract nouns, adjectives, verbs, and words alike in sound but different in spelling and meaning, which we regard as an important improvement." — *Salem Observer.*

## YOUNG LADIES' ELOCUTIONARY READER;

* Containing a Selection of Reading Lessons, by ANNA U. RUSSELL, and the Rules of Elocution, adapted to Female Readers, by WILLIAM RUSSELL. 12mo. pp. 480. Sheep. $1,00.

INTRODUCTION TO THE SAME, for Younger Classes. Sheep. 63c.

* These works are intended to combine, in each volume, the twofold advantage of a series of Reading Lessons, selected under the special influence of *feminine taste and habits*, with a manual of elocution, *adapted expressly* to the systematic instruction of *females* in the art of reading. The "Reader" and the "Introduction" are graduated in adaptation to each other, and, along with "Russell's Elementary Series and Sequel," furnish a complete course of Instruction, from the rudiments of *spelling*, to the rules and principles of *elocutionary reading.*

"Here is a book worth having — well prepared, well printed, and adapted to the wants of the times. The accomplishment of fine elocution has never taken its just rank in our systems of female education.

"The rules given by Mr. Russell for the management of the voice evince judgment and experience; and the taste exhibited in a copious selection from the treasures of elegant literature, is fine and unexceptionable. We are truly glad that this important subject has been taken up by pens so competent to illustrate it, and trust that a book which so happily combines eloquence with poetical wisdom, will find the favor that it deserves from the teachers and pupils of our country." — *Hartford Courant.*

*From the Rev. Dr. Putnam, Chairman of the School Committee of Roxbury.*

"Mr. Russell's two volumes, 'The Young Ladies' Elocutionary Reader,' and the 'Introduction' to the same, have been introduced into our principal girls' grammar schools. They give great satisfaction to the teachers and the committee. I consider them incomparably the best books, for young ladies' reading-books, that have ever been compiled in this country. The selections have been made with good judgment and taste; and Mr. Russell's well-known skill in the science and practice of elocution is manifested to good purpose in the introductory remarks and illustrations. These volumes are a very valuable addition to our school literature.

"ROXBURY, Jan. 27, 1846."

# GREEK AND LATIN TEXT-BOOKS.

## ARNOLD'S GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION.

* A Practical Introduction to Greek Prose Composition. By THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, A. M. Revised Edition, with References to Kühner's Greek Grammar. Published under the supervision of Prof. CHAMPLIN, of Waterville College. 12mo. pp. 204. Cloth. 84c.

A professor at Burlington College writes, — "I have been so much pleased with Arnold's work as to adopt it as a text-book in college. The distinctness with which the differences between the idioms of Greek and English are exhibited, is worthy of all praise."

## ADAM'S LATIN GRAMMAR, ABRIDGED.

Designed for the Use of Beginners. A new Edition, corrected and improved. 18mo. pp. 170. Sheep. 40c.

"This abridgment contains all those parts of Adam's Grammar which are usually marked by the instructor to be committed to memory by the beginner, and is well selected, and clearly and correctly printed." — *American Monthly.*

## BOWEN'S VIRGIL.

Virgil; with English Notes, prepared for the Use of Classical Schools and Colleges, by FRANCIS BOWEN, A. M. 4th ed. 8vo. pp. 600. $2,25.

"This edition of Virgil is one of the most accurately printed classics that have appeared in the United States. In his performance of the editorial duties, Mr. Bowen has done all that can be expected. In his notes and introductions, the editor has condensed and put into an intelligible form all the requisite learning." — *N. A. Review.*

"The editor has made good use of all the best authorities in the preparation of his introduction and notes. We have read a large portion of Mr. Bowen's notes, and like them much." — *Christian Examiner.*

"This is a work of very great merit; and without disparaging the other good editions of Virgil which are before the public, we have no hesitation in giving the palm to this." — *Courier.*

## BECK'S LATIN SYNTAX.

* Syntax of the Latin Language, chiefly from the German of C. G. ZUMPT. By CHARLES BECK, Professor of Latin in Harvard University. 2d edition, carefully revised. 12mo. pp. 200. Sheep. 84c.

"Zumpt's Syntax I have always considered the most philosophical and practical treatise on that subject that *could* be arranged." — *Prof. Prentice.*

A professor at Virginia University writes, — "Such is my opinion of Dr. Beck's Syntax, that I have constantly used it as a text-book since its first publication."

## BECK'S HERCULES FURENS.

* A Tragedy of Seneca, edited by CHARLES BECK, Professor of Latin in Harvard University. 18mo. pp. 100. Cloth. 42c.

A professor at Burlington writes, — "The edition of Hercules Furens betrays the same competent hand as the Medea, edited by Professor Beck in 1834."

"The lovers of Roman Literature will thank Professor Beck for bringing out this play in so correct and scholarlike a form. He has adorned it with the fruits of ripe learning, carefully avoiding unnecessary show, and all pedantry." — *N. A. Review.*

## BECK'S BRUTUS.

* Cicero de Claribus Oratoribus, Liber qui dicitur Brutus. Edited by CHARLES BECK. 18mo. pp. 152. Cloth. 42c.

## DEMOSTHENES DE CORONA.

* The Oration of Demosthenes on the Crown, with Notes, by J. T. CHAMPLIN, Professor of Greek in Waterville College, Maine. Second Edition, with an entire new body of Notes. 12mo. pp. 268. $1,00.

"This new edition of the Oration on the Crown, with a rich body of notes, must be a welcome present to the classical teacher. That such a work was needed, will be denied by no one who has attempted to use the shallow and inaccurate edition of Negris." — *Christian Review.*

"The object of its preparation is excellent, and carried out with distinguished skill. The notes are just what notes should be. They are not a *pony*, but a guide. But the crowning excellence of Prof. C.'s performance we regard to be, the happy manner in which he has developed the course of thought pursued by the orator." — *Southern Literary Messenger.*

## FELTON'S AGAMEMNON.

* The Agamemnon of Æschylus, with Notes by C. C. FELTON, A. M., Eliot Professor of Greek in Harvard University. 12mo. pp. 210. $1,00

"The Agamemnon of Æschylus, by Professor Felton, is one of the best contributions to the cause of classical learning which has issued from the American press. The type and size of the paper corresponds to the Greek Tragedies of Pres. Woolsey, and, with those excellent editions, should occupy a place in the library of every student. The notes are just as they should be, — exegetical, but not dry; full, and yet not diffuse; learned and exact, but not above the comprehension of the student, or out of the range of his wants." — *Prof. Owen.*

## FELTON'S HOMER'S ILIAD.

* The Iliad of Homer, from the Text of WOLF. With English Notes. Edited by C. C. FELTON, A. M., Eliot Professor of Greek in Harvard University. Second Edition, with the Text carefully revised, and the Notes entirely re-written. 12mo. pp. 598. Sheep. $1,50.

THE SAME WORK, with Flaxman's Plates. 8vo. pp. 598. Cloth. $3,60.

* "The notes are brief and appropriate, always in good taste, and wholly free from pedantry. The execution of the work is, in all respects, entitled to the highest praise. Its typography is rich and beautiful; and, so far as we have examined, we have found it executed with great accuracy." — *North American Review.*

"The new edition amply fulfils the promise of the editor's first attempt. The notes are very much enlarged, and give proof of careful study and mature scholarship. They have the further recommendation, that they are not mere explanations of perplexed passages, but in many cases have the merit of critical essays on the subject-matter." — *Southern Review.*

"We very much question whether, with all our preëminence above the Americans in the elegances of life, we could produce a school book that should, by its beauty, vie in any degree with the Homer of Professor Felton." — *London Examiner.*

## GROTIUS DE VERITATE RELIGIONIS CHRISTIANAE.

Cum Notulis JOANNIS CLERICI. Accesserunt ejusdem de eligenda inter Christianos dissentientes Sententia, et contra Indifferentiam Religionum Libri duo. 12mo. pp. 404. Boards. $1,00.

## GREEK READER,

By FREDERICK JACOBS. With an enlarged and complete Lexicon. From the twelfth German edition. Edited by PICKERING. 12mo. pp. 528. Sheep. $1,00.

"It is proper to state, in the first place, that this edition contains the whole of the former text, with considerable additional matter, consisting of prose and poetry. To the poetical part have been added some of the most beautiful and entirely unexceptionable odes of Anacreon, and extracts from Bion and Moschus.

"The text and Lexicon have been carefully compared, to ascertain what omissions, either of words or appropriate meanings, existed in the latter, to supply such deficiencies, and to insert the words which occur in the additional extracts above mentioned. The number of additions to the Lexicon amounts to more than a thousand." —*Preface.*

## GORGIAS OF PLATO.

The Gorgias of Plato, chiefly according to Stallbaum's Text. With Notes by THEODORE D. WOOLSEY, Professor of Greek in Yale College. 1 vol. 12mo. pp. 290. Sheep. $1,00.

A Professor at Bowdoin College writes, — "The Gorgias I have read with great satisfaction, and am much gratified with this first effort to present one of Plato's Dialogues to American students in an attractive form. The beauty of the type, and the thorough work of the editor, leave nothing to desire. * * * * In the introduction and the notes, students will find all that is necessary to enable them to enter into the intricacies of this fine specimen of the Socratic method."

## KUHNER'S LATIN GRAMMAR.

Elementary Grammar of the Latin Language, with a Series of Latin and English Exercises for Translation, and a Collection of Latin Reading Lessons, with the requisite Vocabularies. By Dr. RAPHAEL KÜHNER, Corrector of the Lyceum, Hanover. Translated from the German by J. T. CHAMPLIN, Professor of Greek and Latin in Waterville College. 12mo. pp. 384. Half morocco. $1,50.

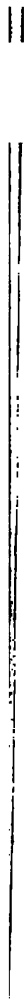
Professor Lincoln, of Providence, says of this work, — "So far as I have examined it, I am convinced that it is the best elementary book we have. I should think you had very successfully accomplished the difficult task of translation — difficult under all circumstances, but especially so in a book of such a character. I have observed, in particular, and with much pleasure, the great care you have given in translating the examples in the exercises."

"It is almost superfluous to say any thing in praise of the grammatical works of Dr. Kühner. The testimony respecting them, both in this country and in Europe, has been uniformly commendatory in the highest degree. As a first book in Latin, there can be but one opinion among enterprising teachers, respecting the merits of this Elementary Grammar of Dr. Kühner's." — *Christian Review.*

## LATIN PHRASE BOOK,

Consisting of Phrases and Dialogues; intended to facilitate the Study of the Latin Language. To which is added a list of Geographical and Proper Names, systematically arranged. 18mo. pp. 126. Half cl. 31c.

"The exercises throughout have been arranged, as nearly as possible, in such a manner as to keep pace with the continued progress of the student — commencing with a nomenclature of various objects with which we are most familiar, then combined in easy sentences, (many of which are selected from authors usually read in schools,) in order to render those sentences familiar to the ear, and, at the same time, to impress the leading word in them more strongly on the mind." — *The Preface.*



THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY
REFERENCE DEPARTMENT

This book is under no circumstances to be taken from the Building

Form 410